

The
Germanic Merchants
And
Die Hanse



Motto: Civitatum Maritimarum.

By Rolf Alfons Woldemar Hejño (Heijno)
Assisted by Lumia L. Alexandra Hejño (Heijno)

Copyright
Owners & Authors Rolf A. Heyno and Lumia L. Heyno
All rights reserved.

INTRODUCTION

The unconventional approach to universally accepted historical facts and archaeological findings may sound as unfounded fabrications, but I believe that considering claims and arguments, which have been totally ignored, distorted, or omitted by many Hansa era historians. The readers will have a completely new outlook of the Germanic merchants' efforts to create a civilized trade in Europe.

Regardless of all the contradictions and misinformation and many derogatory statements to besmirch the Germanic merchants' as was done, for example, by a fiction writer by the name of Thomas Mann in his book "Buddenbrooks", we have to admit that the Germanic merchants were able to create lasting civil organization whose many laws, rules and regulations are still used widely in the whole world.

According to my understanding the best example of their activities is the trade of the Baltic Sea, including the area we know today as the Ex-Soviet Union with which the Germanic merchants traded long before Rurik and his men invaded the said area.

To achieve their goals the Germanic merchants had worked for several millenniums, had gone through many difficult times and sever hardships. And had survived innumerable, greedy and ruthless rulers' efforts to rob them from their rightful rewards, and were finally disrupted brutally by Jean Batiste Jules Bernadotte, Napoleon's Marshal and later the King of Sweden, one of the biggest war criminals of all times. According to historical books even Hitler gave Jews a chance to leave Germany before the holocaust. (See the movie "Voyage of the Damned").

The best description of the massacre of Luebeck you will find in internet "Luebeck 1806 (Catch of Luebeck translate this page)", and in the book "Chronides of Three Free Cities" by Wilson King, one time Consul of the United States at Bremen. Published by J. M. Dent & Sons Ltd. London and E.P. Dutton & Co. New York 1914.

"A Peoples' greatness can be measured only by how powerful are their opponents, because powerful people don't have time for insignificants."

Rolf Alfons Woldemar Heijno

INDEX

CHAPTER I	1 - 2
Pre - historic times.	
CHAPTER II	3 - 6
Migration of the Indo-Europeans back to Europe.	
CHAPTER III	6 - 10
The Flood River of death, Troy, Thracia, Tocharians.	
CHAPTER IV	10 - 13
Cuneiform, Runic characters, Herodotus and Scythians. Trading activities in Europe.	
CHAPTER V	13 - 18
Germanic tribes. Huns invasion.	
CHAPTER VI	18 - 24
Finno-Ugrian Tribes (Finnic and Ugric).	
CHAPTER VII	25 - 30
Frankens' Kingdom, Rerik-Hedeby, Danish King Godfred.	
CHAPTER VIII	30 - 34
Marco Polo.	
CHAPTER IX	34 - 39
Bruegge (Brugess).	
CHAPTER X	39 - 43
Gotland and Goths' civilization and trading activities.	

CHAPTER XI	44 - 48
Nord Weg, Bergen-Bjoerkoe.	
CHAPTER XII	48 - 54
Vikings and Viking Era.	
CHAPTER XIII	54 - 59
Buried treasures.	
CHAPTER XIV	59 - 62
Crusades, Emperor Charles IV visit to Luebeck.	
CHAPTER XV	62 - 66
Richard I Lionheart signs a treaty with the Count of Hainaut, Flemish and Normans fight for the supremacy of Bruegge.	
CHAPTER XVI	67 - 70
Lothar the Duke of Saxony and his son Henry the Lion Reclaim the Germanic ancestral lands, iron plough invented, Luebeck made Free Imperial City State by Fredrick Barbarossa.	
CHAPTER XVII	70 - 75
Short histories of Luebeck, Cologne, Frankfurt am Main, Bremen, Hamburg, Stettin (Szczecin) and Rostock.	
CHAPTER XVIII	75 - 79
Hamburg-Luebeck treaty in 1241 which included also Visby.	
CHAPTER XIX	79 - 84
Death of Fredrick I Barbarossa, the foundation of "Die Hanse".	
CHAPTER XX	84 - 91
Head office of "Die Hanse" established in Luebeck. Waldemar IV Atterdag of Denmark sold Viro (Estonia) to the Germanic Knights and sacked Visby in 1361. "Die Hanse" forced Waldemar IV Atterdag into a humiliating Peace treaty in Strahlsund in 1370.	

CHAPTER XXI 91 - 98

Summary of the events in Fenno-Scandia, Kalmar Union.

CHAPTER XXII 98 - 104

Ravel in Viro (Tallinn in Estonia) and Riga in Lettland (Latvia)
became Hansa cities. Gustav I Vasa. 30-years War.

CHAPTER XXIII 104 - 112

Red and white striped sails replaced by an ancient double-headed eagle
from late 6th –millennium BC.

CHAPTER XXIV 112 - 118

French Revolution. “Madame Guillotine”. Plundering of Venice.
Massacre of Luebeck by Jean Batiste Bernadotte.

CHAPTER XXV 118 - 126

The Heijno (Hainault-Haino) Patrician Dynasty.

CHAPTER I

There are innumerable books where the fighting classes are glorified for their courageous and glorious conquests completely ignoring the human sufferings and misery their conquests caused to innocent people. But the heroic and brave Germanic merchants have received little honour though many of them lost their lives unknown to the world while crossing bitter seas in their small ships, no bigger than boats, exploring hostile territories and fighting pirates, marauders and greedy local rulers in search of new markets.

Yet the history of trade is a history of our advanced civilization and heritage.

There are also many books about the northern marauders whom many writers fancy to call "Vikings" not even understanding the meaning of the word "Viking" pronounced in Scandinavian languages as "veeking" and means "to do the bays". In other words, to rob the merchants, as they passed the bays in their ships with full of merchandise. In those books they also tell about the "Slavic tribes" who lived in "Russia before Rurik and his men invaded the area.

However, none of the said writers have ever told what language the so called "Slavic tribes" spoke. Considering that Rurik was a Goth from Gotland it is hard for me to believe that he spoke Slavic language. Especially as the said writers have never mentioned the names of the "Slavic tribes" the way we know for example the Germanic tribes such as the Goths, the Jutes, the Friesians, the Angles, the Saxons, the Frankens etc. etc. etc. Therefore also it is very hard for me to accept that the "Slavic tribes" invited the "Vikings" to be their rulers. Some writers also tell that the "Vikings" carried their boats from one river to another river and that way were able to travel along the river Dniepr to the Black Sea and along the river Volga to the Caspian Sea.

How did they know that there were such rivers as Dniepr and Volga?

Being in "Russian" wilderness; how did they know which way to travel and where to start carrying their boats to another river?

Something just doesn't add up in my books, because if everything happened the way the story tellers are trying to make us believe, I am afraid that Rurik and his guys would still be trying to figure their way out of the "Russian" wilderness. Therefore to correct the enormous discrepancies of these writers' wild stories I want to point out the following facts:

Before The Russian Revolution around the end of the 19th century a Finnish researcher and explorer by the name of M.A. Castren made extensive travels to Russia to find out about the Finno-Ugrian people.

The Finno-Ugrian people were classified according to their places of habitation.

In Finland there were several distinctive tribes which formed the Finland's Finns.

In Baltic area there were the Viro tribe (Estonians), the Latts tribe (Latvians) and the Liivs tribe (Lithuanians).

Their closest neighbours to the east were the Inger tribe (Ishor), the Vatja tribe and Merja tribe.

Going north-east were the Carelian tribes, the Aunus and the Viena Carelians and the Veps.

Their neighbours to the east, all the way to the Ural Mountains, were the Permic group of Finno-Ugrians which consisted of the Komi-Finns, the Mari and the Mordva tribes.

East of the Ural Mountains were the Ob-river Finno-Ugrian tribes namely the Hanti and Mansi tribes whose close relatives were the Hungarians.

All these tribes are of Finnic origin and speak about the same Finnic language with somewhat different dialect.

The information about Finno-Ugrians could be verified with the M.A. Castren Association in Helsinki, Finland.

Considering also that the central and southern parts of "Russia", between the Carpathian Mountains and the river Don, were populated by the Indo-Germanic people, who were closely related to the Goths as will be explained in the future chapters, we have to take the "Viking" story tellers with a grain of salt. Especially as at the beginning of our Christian Era (C.E.) around the same time as Boudicia (Boudicca) was the Queen of Iceni in Britain who died in 62 A.D. while fighting the Romans, the Permic Finns had a Queen as the head of state, whom they called "The Northern Woman with few teeth" as stated in The Finnish Epic of Kalevala, and who was also known to Romans.

All this clearly indicates that there weren't any such people as "Slavic tribes" in "Russia" at the time of the so called "Vikings".

Then there are few books about "Die Hanse" or "Hansa" also wrongly called "The Hanseatic League". I said "wrongly called" because "Die Hanse" was originally established by one family and merchants who were later admitted into "Die Hanse" didn't have a "voice" as to how "Die Hanse" was governed, as will be explained in one of the following chapters.

In these books the writers are mostly preoccupied in telling how wealthy and prosperous the Hansa Patricians were, however, among them are also those who are accusing the Patrician of all kind of wrong doings such as protectionism, monopolization etc., completely disregarding that the word "monopoly" didn't even exist in those days.

In fact, "Die Hanse" was organized on the principles of an Empire because there weren't any laws, rules nor regulations concerning any trade. Principally the ruling classes didn't consider it to be "proper" to be involved in commoners' affairs, because they worked for their living. Therefore we also have to remember that the rulers, who had an autocratic power in their domain, decided alone who had the right to enter their territories and trade with their subjects.

Considering also the total lawlessness, the Hanse Patricians had to devise all laws, rules and regulations for commercial activities. They also had to organize the merchants Guilds to protect their trade against cheaters which were later adopted also by most other artisans and tradesmen.

From all the books about "Die Hanse", I have been able to find only one author who was wondering how perfectly "Die Hanse" was organized;

"With an immense amount of power and stringently enforced laws without having any precedence as an example". He also found all this as a mystery because there weren't any written documents to explain it. To unravel the mystery of the Hansa merchants we have to look into the unwritten history, the legends and folklore of the European people, which have emerged through new archaeological finds and new dating procedures. With the help of modern methods many artefacts, which were considered as "out of place artefacts", have been placed in chronological order.

We also have to consider that humans inhabited the so called Pre-Carpathia for about hundred thousand years and that there was a white settlement in the North America around 7000 B.C. and that there is also evidence of human existence in the North America some 14000 years ago.

During the Ice Age many European white people from the northern and the central Europe were forced to move to warmer areas either south to the Middle East and Africa or to Asia, India and Japan.

Considering also that in those days the water level in oceans was much lower, the Bering Strait must have been much narrower which facilitated the migration from Asia to the North and South Americas.

There are many proofs of lower water level in the oceans during the Ice Age. For example in the Atlantic Ocean there are ruins under the water on the European side and in the Bahamas. In southern France there are caves which today are accessible only by divers. In the caves there are drawings of wild animals on the walls indicating that they were accessible by land in pre-historic times.

In the Pacific Ocean, not far from Japan and Polynesia, there are ruins under water, for example, such as the Temple of Mu.

CHAPTER II

As the climate started to become warmer and the ice receded, some of the white people started to migrate back to Europe. The first people to move northward from the area we know today as central Siberia, or that general area, were the reindeer herders, the Sami people, better known as Laplanders, together with some of the Finnic reindeer herders. As reindeer herders they were forced to move with their herds because their traditional area became too warm. It is well known fact that the reindeers feed on the lichen, which doesn't grow in a warm climate.

As they reached the base of the Ural Mountains a small group of the Sami and some of the Finnic reindeer herders went straight up to the north on the east side of the Ural Mountains all the way to the Barent Sea in Siberia where their descendants still live.

The main group of the migrants which entered the European side between the Ural Mountains and the Caspian Sea is today called Indo-Europeans.

From these Indo-Europeans the Sami and the Finnic people turned north on the western side of the Ural Mountains and followed the reindeer herders all the way to the whole of northern "Russia", the Baltic area and Fenno-Scandia.

The name Finno-Ugrian comes most likely from the Slavic language "Finska-Ugorsky" which means people who live by the mountains, in this case, the Ural Mountains. The fact that the Finno-Ugrians populated the whole of northern "Russia" and Fenno-Scandia, is easily proven by the fact, that as late as The World War II wherever the Sami people herded their reindeers, their next door neighbours were always of Finno-Ugrian origin, some of them had even adopted reindeer herding.

In Norway there is even an area called Finnmarken.

The main group of Indo-Europeans is called today Indo-Germanic. From this body of Indo-Germanic people, a small group split, and migrated along the eastern side of the Caspian Sea, and ended up in the area which today is called Iran.

As the main body of the Indo-Germanic people migrated westward, another small group split, and crossed the Caucasus Mountains between the Caspian Sea and the Black Sea, and ended up in Iraq and Turkey.

However, the main group of Indo-Germanic people continued their colonization of the European wilderness to the Carpathian Mountains where some of the tribes turned south and migrated to the Balkan.

The main tribes of the Indo-Germanic people continued their colonization to the west by either crossing the Carpathian Mountains, or migrating between the mountains and the Baltic area, which was populated by the Finno-Ugrian tribes, the Viro, the Latts, and the Liivs. Slowly the whole central Europe and the southern Scandinavia were populated all the way to the North Sea, and they even entered the British Isles.

The Indo-Germanic groups which had split from the main Indo-Germanic body and migrated along the eastern side of the Caspian Sea and those who had crossed the Caucasus Mountains joined the white people who had migrated from Europe during the Ice Age and assimilated with them.

We remember that during the Ice Age the Black Sea didn't have any connection with the Mediterranean Sea. It was after the Ice Age as the water levels in the Ocean rose and water broke through the Bosphorus Isthmus that the Black Sea was connected to the Mediterranean. This event must have been the Great Flood mentioned in the Epic of Gilgamesh because it flooded the inhabited shores of the Black Sea.

It is said that the water of the Black Sea is like two layers. The old water is heavier and darker, therefore it is at the bottom, and the "new" water, which is lighter, is on the surface of the sea.

The biblical Hittites who were of Indo-Germanic origin lived on the southern shores of the Black Sea close to the Bosphorus, experienced the full fury of the flood.

Hittites who lived in the area until about 700 B.C. had a very high civilization and were kindred and contemporaries of Abraham whose country was called Haran as stated in the Bible. (See Genesis 11:31 and Genesis 12: 1).

They were called by the Semitic people of 18th century B.C. as Amorites whose interests lay in religion, in learning and in commerce. (This was also mentioned by Werner Keller in his book "The Bible as History").

It is also notable that their merchants' emblem was the "double headed eagle".

In excavations the archaeologists have found an artefact of the said emblem which was dated of being from around late 6th millennium B.C.

Another interesting aspect is that the Hittites King was called Mari, and that in Russia on the north side of the Caucasus Mountains exists a Finnic tribe called Mari, and that the name of the Hittites King's Chamberlain was Hattu-Zitiz.

Could there be any connection between the Hittites, and the Latvians and Lithuanians, because among them there are surnames ending with "-sitis, -tis" and just plain "-s"?

As the nomadic Semitic tribes conquered the Sumerians (Epic of Gilgamesh) and became the rulers of the lower parts of the fertile lands between the rivers Euphrates and Tigris, they added to their many gods and fairies, the Sumerian gods, among them the Sumerian moon god Al-ilah and started to expand their rule northwards. Therefore many people of European origin crossed the Caucasus Mountains and assimilated with their kindred, the Indo-Europeans who lived north of the Caucasus Mountains.

I also believe that some of the Hittites crossed the Bosphorus Strait and assimilated with the other Indo-Europeans who had migrated through the area we know today as "Russia" and also with the original white European people, the so called Aryans, Celts, Carpato-Danubians, or "who-so-ever" you prefer to call them.

The polytheism of the Semitic tribes could have also been the reason why God told Abraham, who wasn't from any of the Semitic tribes, to renounce all other gods and worship only one Omniscient, omnipotent and Omnipresent God.

We also have to keep in mind that for example the Babylonians' King Hammurabi, in the Bible called Amraphel (Genesis 14), was a contemporary of Abraham and that King David later had Hittites in his army, and married Uriah's wife Bathsheba, who was a Hittite, and was King Solomon's mother. (II Samuel 11:3, 4 and I Kings 2:13).

From the Bible reference books you may also read that Abraham was some kind of a tribal leader, or a King, who lived around 1800 B.C. And who defeated four of the famous kings with his army about 318 men. This in my opinion clearly demonstrates that the human population in the whole world was very small at that time. From the history books we have also read about the great migrations of the Indo-European people. However, considering that said migrations took place a few millenniums before Abraham's time, in my opinion, couldn't have been very great, nor numerous.

Before the ice melted around 12000 B.C. Siberia, northern "Russia", northern Europe and Fenno-Scandia, British Isles included, must have been under permafrost and therefore not habitable. As the Ice melted it must have taken quite-a-while to become enough warm for the vegetation to take place.

It was pointed out that the first people who moved into the said area were the reindeer herders. They were followed by people who lived by fishing, hunting and gathering. In Fenno-Scandia the archaeological evidence, such as fishing nets, pieces of sleigh and bone hoe, prove that there were humans in the area around 9000-7000 B.C. This, in my opinion, proves that colonization of the European wilderness, the area between the Ural Mountains in the east, and Atlantic Ocean in the west, after the Ice Age happened very slowly.

In the Bible we have a very good example of how the nations were built in those days. Around 1800 B.C. a man called Abraham and his wife Sarah started a family. In the course of about 700 years their descendants represented 12 tribes. Then after being for a few centuries nomadic tribes, they became a nation. Similarly other families grew and became clans, tribes and nations. However, considering that the Indo-Europeans lived in much harsher environment, it took them much longer to become nations. We also have to consider that all Europeans, who were forced to move from Europe because of the Ice Age, didn't return back to Europe, but remained in the Middle-East, Africa, India, Asia, Japan and even in Americas, assimilated with the local inhabitants and disappeared from history forever. A very good example of this assimilation, in my opinion, is that there are children born in these areas with blue eyes whom the local call "Albinos".

We also have to remember that in those days the human population in the whole world was very small in comparison with today's six-plus billions of people.

For example, it has been calculated that in the year 1000 A.D. there were only 300 million human beings in the world. So you can imagine how small the human population was, for instance, in the 4th millennium B.C.

As the families grew into clans, tribes and nations, their rulers started to build towns and cities, new needs arose.

To satisfy the rulers' needs, and the necessities of life of the people, men, who were prepared to risk their lives, established a class of their own, namely the merchants' class.

It is next to impossible to pinpoint the exact time when people started the trading activities. However, one thing is certain that it started with bartering innumerable millenniums ago.

In those days, all kinds of marauders and robbers were very active due to the total lawlessness, therefore people were afraid of all strangers. It must have been a painstaking effort to make people to understand that the traders came in peace. At the same time the traders had to secure their own safety, therefore they selected open spaces for their bartering places to avoid surprise attacks, and to show to the people that they didn't have any sinister intentions.

After several generations the trust between the merchants and the people was established. The precious metals, such as gold, silver and even iron were used to pay for the goods and wares, and the bartering places became market places. Around these market places, settlements started to grow into towns, and later into cities, because as the merchants set up their own colonies by establishing trading posts they needed their own craftsmen and artisans.

From these newly established posts the merchants sent out their young traders to search for new bartering places, to turn them later into new market places. This was done throughout the centuries, even millenniums.

I believe that this was the way all trading routes in those days were built, the well known Silk Road included, otherwise, considering the lawless times and constant fear of robbers and marauders, it would have been impossible for merchants to survive. They also had to use local traders to bring the goods and wares to newly established market places from far away areas, unknown to them, and hostile to the strangers.

As the local people saw how the newcomers lived and prospered, they started to imitate them, and in that way the merchants became a vehicle of cultural exchange, and brought civilization to many nations. For example, in trading posts and depots the merchants and their artisans needed workers to perform many tasks for which they had to hire local people and teach them many skills. This improved the living standard of the local population.

In those days not many people became merchants simply because most people were illiterate, and literacy was one of the main requirements to become a merchant. Especially considering that all trades were taught at home, there weren't many possibilities for outsiders to learn how to read and write and become a merchant. On top of that the aspirant had to be robust, fearless and trustworthy to survive the hardships the merchants had to encounter.

CHAPTER III

After the Ice Age central and northern Europe were uninhabitable for millenniums therefore there weren't any roads or trails to follow. People who populated the area were forced to migrate by foot, by horseback or by boats utilizing the many lakes and rivers as "highways". If you look at the map of northern Europe including "Russia" (the former Soviet Union) and Fenno-Scandia, you will find a vast network of lakes and rivers. Later the merchants used these waterways to transport their goods and wares.

To have a better understanding of the then known world we have to look into a few historical and archaeological facts in chronological order:

- 1) Cuneiform tablets 3300 B.C. and older.
- 2) Troy Third millennium B.C.
- 3) Thracia 2400 B.C.
- 4) Abraham 1800 B.C.
- 5) Tocharians 1500 B.C.

1. CUNEIFORM TABLETS.

The time which embraces several millenniums of high civilization between Noah and Abraham has been almost totally ignored in the Bible with the exception of two names, namely Nimrod and Babel (see Genesis 10: 8-10 and Genesis 11: 9). The whole period of glorious achievements was therefore nearly completely forgotten until young English archaeologist by the name of Austen Henry Layard came across the cuneiform tablets while excavating an Assyrian mound in Mesopotamia in 1839 A.D. The tablets proved to be a real treasure trove, not only in literary sense, but because they consisted mainly of inventories of goods and wares, and a story of how Sargon of Agade and Gudea of Lagash in the Third millennium B.C. made several expeditions to protect their merchants' colonies. This in my opinion, proves that there was a brisk commercial activity in the ancient world.

However, because in said cuneiform tablets there is a story about a king called Gilgamesh, a great builder of cities, who lived in the 3rd or 4th millennium B.C. and also a story of a great flood, the tablets were considered mainly as a valuable literary jewels.

In the oldest Sumerian story the hero of the flood to whom God told to build a boat and to take with him his wife, and a seed of all living things, was called Ziusudra. And later in the Babylonian version his name was Utnapishtim (see Epic of Gilgamesh). The story also tells how Gilgamesh crossed the river of death. Peculiarly a somewhat similar story is also told in the Finnish Epic of Kalevala, how Lemminkainen was thrown into the river of death. The stories of Kalevala originate from the Finno-Ugrians in "Russia", and were collected by Elias Lonnrot in the 19th century A.D.

I believe that both stories refer to the same river of death, because as the ice melted the water levels in the oceans rose and created flooding in many parts of the world. In the Middle-East between the Black Sea and the Sea of Marmara, which is an extension of the Mediterranean Sea, the rising water created a tremendous pressure against Bosphorus Isthmus, and because the water level was much lower in the Black Sea, the Bosphorus Isthmus broke and created a "Tsunami" style wave which rushed into the Black Sea.

However, considering the vast area of the Black Sea, it must have taken long time before the water level in the Black Sea rose to the same level as in the Mediterranean Sea. Therefore there must have been a strong current between the Mediterranean Sea and the Black Sea. The rapids of the river, which consisted of the Dardanelles Strait, the Sea of Marmare and the Bosphorus Strait, were so terrifying that it was called the "river of death". Especially considering the awesome sufferings and death the flood had caused around the Black Sea area, which at that time, was populated mainly by the Indo-Europeans. All this, according to my understanding, clearly points to the fact that there were great civilizations in the ancient times. Therefore also said event didn't go unnoticed, but because the learning and technology hadn't reached our level, many historians in the past, dumped the evidence as legends and Sagas into the "dustbin" of mythology.

Today, due to the latest discoveries and advanced technologies, the modern archaeologists have been able to form a fairly good picture of the forgotten era.

The most intriguing aspect to my efforts to unravel the Hanse merchants activities, is that the cuneiform tablets consist mainly of inventories of all kinds of merchandise, and the story of the two rulers who protected their merchants' colonies. This in my opinion clearly proves that already before 3000 B.C. the "international" merchants were well organized and performed valuable services to the rulers.

Due to the lawless and turbulent times the merchants were forced to establish colonies in their trading posts along their trading routes to protect themselves and their wares against many robber bands which were roaming the countryside for an easy prey. They also had to devise an emblem to identify themselves as being "international" merchants, trading in the east and in the west, therefore they came up with the "double headed eagle", as mentioned before.

We have to remember that in those days most people were illiterate and therefore the merchants had to use signs and symbols to express themselves.

For a contemporary person of today who has all the facilities and human rights to express himself, it is very difficult to place himself into the time of 3000 - 4000 B.C.

We shouldn't forget that all the rights and privileges we have today are very young, maybe about only 100 years, or less at the best.

The old order prevailed for millenniums, whereby all trades were taught at home, from father and mother to the sons and daughters. For example, a tailor's sons became tailors, a baker's sons became bakers, a blacksmith's sons became blacksmiths and so on.

A tailor's son couldn't become a baker or vice versa simply because there wasn't anyone who would have been able to teach him the trade, same was it with all other trades, merchants included.

The merchants had to have literacy skills, for their fathers couldn't stay at home to teach their sons, tutors were used to teach the youngsters the basics of learning. These tutors could have been either the oldest male members of the family who stayed at home, or female members who also had literacy skills. Later the young men joined their fathers in trade expeditions to "learn the ropes" of the trade, to get familiar with the trading routes, and to get acquainted with other merchants abroad.

Later the merchants established learning centres which during the centuries became well known learning institutions.

In those days all transactions were made on mutual trust and a hand shake. There weren't any written agreements. If anyone betrayed the trust of his trading partners, he was out of all trading possibilities, and didn't have any future as a merchant.

We also have to remember that throughout many millenniums people lived in a patriarchal society. Marriages were arranged by the parents and the parents were very particular whom to accept into the family. For example, a farmer wouldn't have accepted a tailor's daughter for his son as a wife, because she wouldn't have known how to milk a cow, and that wouldn't have helped his son, nor to be beneficial to the farmer's farming activities. In those days everything had to be taken into consideration because the life in general was very tough.

It was even more so with the merchants, because a merchant's wife had to be literate and to be able to look after her husband's trade at home during his absence abroad. For example, she had to be able to evaluate precious metals and stones, and to teach their children said skills at the time when her husband was on trade expeditions. Therefore the merchants put the highest priority on literacy skills and therefore the merchants' sons often married merchants' daughters, and also because of the rich dowries that followed the merchants' daughters, which increased the future in-laws' fortunes.

We also have to remember that in those days many rulers were illiterate, and therefore the merchants' daughters were coveted even by many rulers, not only for their literacy skills, but also for their dowries. This led to the fact that many rulers were related to the "international" merchants who were considered as equals to the Kings and Princes. A very good example of this is found in the Bible in the Book of Job. The Book of Job is considered to be oldest Book in the Bible, and in my opinion, places it into the Pre-Abraham's time. In the Book of Job it is said that "after Job had gone through all possible plights, and became wealthy, he gave rich inheritance even to this daughters."

2. TROY.

The City of Troy is located in Turkey at the end of the Mediterranean Sea where the Dardanelles Strait begins. It is next to impossible to tell when the ancient City of Troy was built because over the millenniums it had been destroyed four or five times, and had always been built on the top of the old ruins. However, it has been estimated that it must have been built sometimes in the early second or late third millennium B.C. We also know that it had a high civilization and was well known cultural centre, which in my opinion indicates, that it must have been also a well known trading centre, with a strong merchants' colony.

In the 19th century A.D. Dr. Heinrich Schliemann (1822-1890) German archaeologist found a cache of gold, jewels and a golden mask while excavating ruins in Turkey.

3. GOLD MASK IN THRACIA.

In the summer of 2004 a Bulgarian archaeologist found in the Town of Shipka a gold mask of an ancient King of Thracia dating it back to 2400 B.C. The gold mask weighed 690 grams (24 oz) and was made very skilfully. It has also been suggested that the well known "Golden Fleece" was also made in the same area. This suggests that there was a very strong merchants' colony.

4. ABRAHAM.

It has been pointed out that Abraham lived around 1800 B.C. and that he was a contemporary of Hammurabi, the King of Semitic people who were worshipping many idols, and had added to their gods and fairies the Sumerians' gods. Therefore God told Abraham to leave the Semitic people and to start to worship one God. Later Abraham asked his servant to find a wife for his son Isaac from his own people, and not from the people among whom they lived, as stated in the Bible. This, in my opinion clearly proves that Abraham wasn't a member of the Semitic tribes.

5. TOCHARIANS.

The discovery in 1977 of the graves in Takla Makan desert, in China, situated between Tibet and Kyrgistan, dating back to 1500 B.C. has changed our knowledge regarding the builders of the well known "Silk Road" and the cities built along it. The cities impressive ruins still lie undisturbed along the said trading route.

The Chinese history has always had legends of blond hair with blue eyed and red hair with green eyed rulers who united the Chinese society and brought civilization to the Chinese people. The Takla Makan mummies of white Europeans which were naturally preserved in dry and hot desert sands, prove the authenticity of the Chinese legends of white rules.

In the region called Wapu over 1000 European corpses had been uncovered by the early 1990, but by 1998 the Chinese government stopped further archaeological excavations, most likely for the fear of exposing more ancient Nordic faces.

Were they afraid that the white Aryans, Carpato-Danubians, Celts or what-so-ever you would like to call them, would also be credited for building the European style pyramids near the City of Xian, in Qui Chauan province in China?

And what about the Great Wall of China, or the inventions of gun powder, fire crackers and the compass for navigation?

In any event, the mummies seemed to be in politically incorrect time and place.

Now even the excavated corpses are slowly deteriorating in Chinese storage rooms.

For ages we have been given the impression that the Chinese invented the gun powder, the fire crackers, the compass and acupuncture. However, the "Ice Man" from the Alps proved a few years ago that traces of acupuncture on his skin were about 1500 years older, than the time, when the Chinese started to use acupuncture.

Now the "scholars" are trying to convince us that the mummified Europeans of the Takla Makan desert were Tocharians, because they spoke that language, also insinuating that the Tocharians were a European tribe, which was an addition to the great Indo-European migration who built and maintained the famous trading route called "The Silk Road", and built the magnificent buildings, temples and centers of learning and art

In view of the cuneiform tablets these explanations didn't sound to me very convincing, therefore some questions came to my mind:

Why would a tribe or a nation migrate from Europe to Asia in 1500 B.C.?

Why would they build a trading route with magnificent buildings and how could they be sure that merchants would use them?

On top of that, according to my knowledge the Tocharian language was unknown in Europe, but was well known in India.

In fact, aren't the "scholars" contradicting their own teachings?

If I remember correctly, they teach that Europe, at that time, was populated by the wild, ignorant barbarians and Celts who wore tartan clothing.

Considering that the tartan clothing was finely woven, I believe that they were a traditional attire of all Celts, Aryans, Carpato-Danubians, or what-so-ever you call them, and that the Scottish and Irish people are the only ones who have preserved them as tradition and heritage.

For example, in excavations in Finnish Carelia the archaeologists found woman's apron of tartan clothing which was embroidered with small bronze swastikas, dating back to around 600 A.D.

Therefore I suggest that the mummified "Tocharians" were the descendants of white European artisans and craftsmen, whose ancestors were employed by the "international" merchants, to work in their trading posts and who had adopted the Tocharian's' language for practical reasons, to be able to communicate with the local inhabitants. Some of the descendants of these white people assimilated during millenniums with the Asian people in China and India and slowly disappeared from history. Some of them were overrun by marauding robber hords, starved to death, and were mummified by hot, dry desert air. The traces of tears on mummified children's cheeks, which were still visible, testified their sufferings and fate.

I also believe that the Great Wall of China is a very good proof how people tried to protect themselves against the marauding gangs.

What concerns the well known trading route, the so called "Silk-Road" and the magnificent cities with temples and centers of learning and art, I believe that they were built and maintained by the then well known Indo-Germanic merchants during several centuries, or even millenniums.

Could they have been the same merchants' colonies which were protected by Sargon of Acade and Gudea of Lagash, as mentioned in the cuneiform tablets, unearthed by English archaeologist Austen Henry Layard in 1839?

CHAPTER IV

There are many books written on how the Indo-European people migrated to Europe, how they became tribes and nations. Most writers have been preoccupied by describing the glorious conquerors and their conquests with complete disregard of human sufferings, but the courageous achievements of the merchants have been totally ignored and even looked down upon.

However, recent archaeological finds and the new testing methods have changed attitudes considerably. They namely prove that white people originally came from Europe and migrated to the Middle-East, Africa, India, and Asia, and even to Japan, and then entered also the North and South Americas, a very good example of these migrations are the Tarim Basin's mummies.

The archaeological finds of the magnificent buildings along the "Silk Road" in Takla Makan desert and in Wapu, China, have proved the achievements of the white merchants, as mentioned in the previous chapter.

The fact that the white people assimilated with the Asian tribes and disappeared from history doesn't mean that they didn't exist, as the DNA tests have proved. It has even been confirmed that the so-called Amazon women were white Europeans.

The archaeologists have also excavated, in the near east, statuettes which have pieces of lapis lazuli inserted in the places of the eyes to signify that these people had blue eyes.

We have also been made to believe that before the Greek civilization and Roman conquests there were only ignorant and illiterate barbarians in the rest of the Europe.

However, due to the archaeological excavations in the ex-Soviet Union the picture is slowly changing. People are starting to understand that for millenniums these Indo-European "barbarians" had their own culture and their own means of communication.

There are also many misunderstandings, misinterpretations and even deliberate distortions of historical facts, depending on "who is writing and for whom it is written", as has been said by many honest historians.

Many archaeological artefacts are also set aside as "out of place artefacts" simply because some of the "historians" don't understand the significance of them, or don't want to change their minds from what they have decided to be the truth. A very good example of this is the Runic script, which was used by many Indo-European people until Bishop Ulfilas in the 4th century A.D. devised the so called Gothic script and translated passages of the Bible into German language.

There are many theories and explanations about the history and the origin of the Runes. Therefore we have to look into the origins of writing. The scholars agree that in the days when people were illiterate, the merchants were the only people who needed to keep records of their goods and wares for their everyday transactions. Nomads and people who lived by fishing, hunting and gathering didn't need to keep records, nor did they have any time for such activities.

However, merchants who were involved in trading activities needed a method for keeping track of their inventories. For this purpose they had to devise a system of counting and communicating. The first attempt seems to have been in the 9th millennium B.C. as clay tokens in various forms and shapes were used to depict objects and numbers as counters. These counters depicted concrete objects pictographically and represented for example a sheep, a basket, a bag etc. Then sometimes at the end of 4th millennium B.C. writing, the way we understand it, started to develop.

All this must have been motivated by the merchants who desired to administer their trade activities more efficiently and who needed workers with literacy skills.

These "new" methods enabled the merchants to teach illiterate locals to read, write and count and to help the merchants to keep inventories of their goods and wares. As pointed out before, most of the cuneiform tablets consisted of inventories of merchandise.

We have to remember that in those days the rulers, who in most cases were illiterate, weren't interested in educating their subjects.

The first writings were basically pictographic but because curvilinear lines were difficult to draw on clay tablets they gradually made place to straight lines and therefore cuneiform became the main writing system. In Egypt, where they used papyrus, curvilinear lines were possible and therefore they used pictography or better known as hieroglyphics.

The Runic symbols have been found in various Bronze Age rock carvings in Western Europe, Scandinavia and in the ex-Soviet Union.

The Russian archaeologists unearthed pottery, glassware and bone combs with Greek and Runic inscriptions as well as not deciphered yet pictograms dating back to 200 B.C.

These pictograms seemed to have been unknown elsewhere, and I believe, the Soviet Russians weren't too eager to decode them so as not to have any unpleasant surprises.

Therefore one can conclude that the pictograms were used only by those Germanic and Finnic people who weren't under the influence of Greeks or Romans.

By examining the different writings and characters one gets the impression that because the cuneiform writings and the Runes are formed of straight lines there must be some kind of direct relation between the systems as in comparison with the Middle- Eastern and Greek writings which have curvilinear characters. Therefore I believe that the Runic writing is much older than the estimate given by the scholars of the "History and Origins of the Runes", especially, considering that Runic characters have been found in the Bronze Age rock carvings in Sweden and The Baltic area and the artefacts unearthed in the ex-Soviet Union. I want to point out that the Bronze Age ended around 1000 B.C.

We also have to remember that the Bastarnai people, who in fact were the ancestors of the Goths, had the highest civilization in Europe around 200 B.C.

Considering that civilizations don't "pop up" from nowhere, but are an evolution of long periods of time, we have to agree that the Indo-Germanic people were highly advanced people in ancient times.

It has also been pointed out that originally only merchants were literate and that information traveled only as fast as people were able to travel through unknown wilderness, therefore the advancement of civilization and knowledge spread at a very slow pace.

We also have to take into consideration that because people were very superstitious, they thought that the Runic characters had some magical powers, and therefore gave the Runes divinatory meanings and used them to obtain magical powers and associated with their deities.

I also want to remind that according to our history books Herodotus the Greek historian visited southern "Russia" in 5th century B.C.

That gives rise to many questions such as for example:

How did Herodotus know that there were people as far up in the north as "Russia"?

What made Herodotus undertake the cumbersome and dangerous trip to the north in 500 B.C?

In those days people didn't take pleasure trips into unknown countries.

Considering that archaeologists in the ex-Soviet Union proved that the area between the rivers Dniepr and Bug was populated by Indo-Germanic Bastarnai people whom Herodotus called Scythians, I dare to suggest that Herodotus received his information from merchants, especially, as it has been said that "Without Russian wheat the builders of the Parthenon would have gone hungry". Doesn't that indicate that the Germanic Bastarnai people had a very strong merchants' colony and therefore they had the highest civilization of their time in the whole Europe?

I also believe that Herodotus traveled to "Russia" with the merchants' caravan:

In the first place, he wouldn't have known which way to travel to reach the people, whom he later called Scythians.

Secondly, the whole of Europe was at that time sparsely populated and people were very suspicious of strangers of whom they had bad experiences, especially people with dark complexion who came to acquire slaves and spoke strange languages.

And thirdly, Herodotus would have needed to assemble a strong detachment of fighting men to protect him against marauders.

Therefore it is safe to assume that Herodotus obtained all information about the people in the north from merchants who also permitted him to join their caravan.

Considering that the people in the north, whom Herodotus called Scythians traded with the merchants from Greece, they must have had a way to express themselves and therefore they must have also had a way of communication.

Therefore I believe that they used Runic script, which was widely used by the Germanic people, as the archaeological finds in “Russia”, proved.

Otherwise there wouldn't have been any need for translations into the Greek language.

How much credit can be given to the Germanic merchants for spreading the knowledge of Runes throughout “Russia”, the whole of Europe and Fenno-Scandia, the Baltic area included may depend on the future research and re-evaluation of the findings in the ex- Soviet Union and possible new archaeological findings.

We already know that in those days said areas were populated by Indo-Germanic and Finno-Ugric people and that around 14 A.D. Roman Empire acquired various goods and wares through Germanic merchants. We also know for sure that at that time only merchants traveled with peaceful intentions and that the fighting classes came only to rob and conquer. It doesn't take much imagination to conclude that merchants were the vehicle of civilization.

Then in 4th century A.D. came the invasion of the Huns, who devastated the whole of central “Russia” and central Europe by plundering, raping and murdering indiscriminately men, women and children, burning their homes and leaving only waste and pillaged tracts.

In the area east of Carpathian Mountains the Bastarnais' high civilization was totally destroyed, most of the people were murdered, and those who survived, fled. Some of them fled northward and slowly assimilated with the Finnic people. Others who fled southward assimilated with the Slav. The Bastarnai people disappeared from history.

In the area west of the Carpathian Mountains many East European Germanic tribes were forced by the Huns to move either north to Scandinavia, or to the south and west. Those who moved west, forced the West Germanic tribes to move further west to Gallia, and even as far as Spain.

CHAPTER V

It was pointed out that the colonization of the European wilderness happened at a very slow pace. People who migrated from Asia, many millenniums ago, we call today Indo-Europeans. It was also mentioned that the Indo-Europeans could be divided into two main groups, namely Finno-Ugrians and Indo-Germanic.

As the Indo-Germanic people reached the North Sea they had developed into several tribes and even nations. Our knowledge of the Indo-Germanic people east of the Carpathian Mountains is fairly limited, especially, because during the Soviet era, most of the information was withheld as “politically incorrect”. However, west of the Carpathian Mountains we know that at the times of the Romans' invasion around the first century B.C. which reached in the north-east to the river Danube, and in the north-west to the river Rhine. There were several Indo-Germanic tribes and nations in central and northern Europe, north of the Danube-Rhine line.

At the coast of the North Sea there were the Frisians who populated the area between the North Sea and the river Weser. In Romans' time this area was known as Friesland, and the North Sea was called by the Romans, Mare Frisicum.

After the Roman Emperor Augustus (27 B.C. – 14 A.D.) had defeated the Belgae and Batavians (the ancestors of the Dutch) the Frisians made a treaty with the Romans in 28 A.D.

However, 16 years later the Roman tax collector became too greedy, the Frisians hanged him and kicked the Romans out from their country. Later the Frisians had to move from their homeland to England, Kent and Flanders, due to the heavy flooding in 250 A.D.

For about 150 years it was impossible to live in Friesland.

Around 400 A.D. some of the Friesians returned to their ancestral homeland, which already had been settled by the Saxons, Angles and Jutes, with whom they had merged.

However, regardless that they were related to these Germanic tribes, they maintained their own identity and their own traditions.

In historical books it is said that Friesian merchants were well known in ancient times. However, the suggestions that they traded also in the Baltic Sea area with Sweden, and even as far as "Russia", doesn't sound to me very convincing.

The Friesians lived west of the river Weser and therefore geographically didn't have direct access to the Baltic Sea, neither would they have been able to travel by sea through the straits of Skagerrak and Kattegat, because the straits were infested by Jutish pirates who were lurking in the bays (i viken).

On top of that the robbers and robber barons were also setting all kind of traps to shipwreck all passing ships. For in those days it was the custom that what-so-ever washed up on the shores was considered as "strandgut", and belong to those who own the land.

The Friesians' neighbours to the east were their relatives, the Saxons, who were much bigger tribe.

In fact, the Saxons were one of the biggest Germanic tribes in Europe. The Saxons lived on both sides of the river Elbe, from the North Sea to about the north-central part of today's Germany including south-western part of the Baltic Sea's shores, where their merchants, together with Goths' merchants, had established the well known trading port called Rerik. Today it is called "Ostseebad Rerik"

This, in my opinion, proves that the Saxons and the Goths had strong merchants' colonies. And knowing the dangers of the straits of Kattegat and Skagerrak, they were forced to establish a trading post in Rerik.

From there they could safely transport their goods and wares to the river Elbe, and from there along the Elbe to the place we know today as Hamburg, without needing to fight the so called "i viken" pirates.

This trading post was later sacked, around 808 A.D. by Jutes' (Danish) King Godfred, who forced the Germanic merchants of Rerik to move to Hedeby, which at that time belonged to Denmark, to be able to collect high taxes from the merchants.

To the north of the Saxons were the Angles, who were closely related to them, and lived at the base of the Jutland peninsula.

North of the Angles lived the Jutes, later called Danes, who gave the name to Jutland (the land of the Jutes).

Most of the Angles moved to the British Isles and established there the Kingdom of Anglia on the eastern coast of "England".

The Jutes, who were one of the most aggressive Germanic tribes were later known as Normen, and had a great influence in the north-western parts of Europe, the British Isles, Scandinavia, and Baltic countries. For centuries they were known as conquerors, and not as peaceful traders.

To the east the Saxons had the Frankens who lived around the river Oder where they had established a town called Frankfurt, not far from today's Berlin.

East of the Frankens, all the way to the Carpathian Mountains, lived the Goths, who populated also parts of the southern coast of the Baltic Sea, between the rivers Oder and Vistula.

At that time the Goths were the biggest Germanic tribe east of the Carpathian Mountains, and could have even been classified as a nation.

They populated the area we know today as Poland, a part of the Czechs Republic and Slovakia.

Having a direct access to the Baltic Sea, the Goths gave the name to the island of Gotland (Goths' land), the same way as the Jutes gave the name to Jutland. Gotland is situated in the Baltic Sea about 50 nautical miles off the south-eastern coast of Sweden.

The early history of Gotland is based on archaeological finds and legends. Like all legends, folklores and mythologies which are based on true events have during the centuries, and even millenniums, fascinated peoples' imaginations, and therefore have accumulated sometime "saga" proportions, or religious beliefs, and that's why they may sound like northern "troll" stories, and therefore it is very difficult to piece together a cohesive picture of the factual events.

However, according to archaeological evidence the people of Gotland had a flourishing sea-merchants' economy in the Bronze Age circa 1500 – 500 B.C.

And considering all other facts I believe that Gothic merchants had established a trading post on the island of Gotland even much earlier. In those days an island was the safest place for trading activities because the surrounding waters acted as a moat against robbers and pirates, and therefore the merchants could be prepared to give a "proper welcome" to all suspicious and un-welcomed visitors. According to my understanding, one of a very few proofs of early Gothic advanced culture and civilization is the Gothic script, which replaced the Runes, and was used among central and northern European people for centuries, until it was replaced by the Roman alphabet. Therefore, to my knowledge, the only tangible proofs of the high Gothic culture are the buildings in Europe which are built according to Gothic architecture.

North of the Goths in Baltic area lived the Finno-Ugrians, or Finnic tribes; the Liivs (Lithuanians), the Latts (Latvians) and the Viro (Estonians).

South of the Goths along the river Danube were the Vandals, the Thuringers, the Burgundians and a few smaller tribes such as the Boemens (Bohemians) and Maren (Moravians).

The Alemains lived around the river Neckar in the south-western part of Germany and the Bayerns (Bavarians) populated the area north of the Alps.

West of the Alemains lived the Germanic Ubli tribe which built the city of Cologne (Koln) where the Romans had a garrison. The original name of Cologne (Koln) was Oppidium Ubiorum and in 50 A.D. the Roman Emperor Claudius named it Colonia Claudia Ara Agrippiense after his wife Agrippina who was a native of the Germanic Ubli tribe.

West of the Ubli tribe at the Strait of Dover (English Channel), the area we know today as Belgium, lived the Germanic Nervii tribe to which tribe the well known Hainault (Haino) merchants' family belonged. As Julius Caesar brought their area under Roman power in 57 B.C. he legislated their area into principality and named it as Principum Hannoniae.

At first I was wondering that why Julius Caesar named the principality as "Hannoniae", and not something else, for example, why not the "Principality of Nervii"?

Later I realized that because the Hainault (Haino) merchant Patricians were related, through marriages, to the merchant Patricians of Venice, Roma, Pisa and Florence, who had a hereditary ducal rank, and as such were the Senators of the Roman Senate and advisors to the Emperor. Therefore the "Roman Patricians" must have advised Emperor Julius Caesar to name the principality after the Hainault (Haino) merchant Patricians to give Hainault (Haino) Patricians equal privileges as they had themselves, because it must also have been beneficial for their own trading activities.

The elevation of the area into principality and their relationship with the Italian Patricians gave the Hainault (Haino) merchant Patricians an advantage over the Germanic merchants, especially, as they were geographically situated between the Roman Empire and the rest of the free Germanic people. We also have to remember that the Family relations, and nobility status, were the most important factors in those days, which kept them separate and apart from the rest of the population, they even spoke a different language. In Romans' times it was Latin and later it was French.

According to the historical account, from the area the Romans called "Germania" they acquired in 14 A.D. horses, hides, leather and amber.

The best indicator of how well organized a trading network the Germanic merchants already had in those early years was the Amber trade.

In those days the Roman upper classes considered amber as a status symbol, because the Roman Emperor Nero (54 – 68 A.D.) was so fascinated by it, that it was said, "he just couldn't have enough of the said substance". At that time amber was obtainable only from the southern and south-eastern shores of the Baltic Sea.

Considering the dangerous and lawless times the merchants had to establish trading posts where their trading activities could be easily protected, usually on an island or a peninsula. Therefore Rerik was an ideal place for the Saxons and Goths merchants because it was situated on a peninsula where the merchants of the Baltic Sea areas brought their goods and wares including amber.

From Rerik the goods and wares were then transported by the Saxon merchants to Friesland. From there the Friesian merchants transported them to Hannoniae (today known as Belgium) and from there the Hainault (Haino) merchants transported them to Florence where the De' Medici merchant Patricians caused the amber to be transported to Rome.

All this may sound to modern people very complicated, but we have to remember, that due to the dangerous and lawless times, the Baltic Sea merchants including Goths, wouldn't have survived the long trip by land, because of the marauding robber bands, which roamed the countryside, nor would they have been able to travel by ships through the straits of Kattegat and Skagerrak because of the "i viken" pirates. Neither would the Friesian merchants been able to deal directly with the Baltic area merchants for the same reasons. Therefore the merchants whom we consider today as middlemen were essential, especially, as the "middlemen" were familiar with the safest routes in their areas and where they were well-known and trusted.

In those days all strangers were shunned and even hated to the point that they were often killed without any questions. However, the areas which were conquered by the Romans were fairly safe especially for the citizens of Rome, because the Romans had garrisons all over the conquered lands which gave some protection to the Roman merchants.

We also have to remember that around 14 A.D. the Romans traded with the people in the eastern part of Europe, and the area we know today as "Russia". Though they hadn't conquered such areas as Thracia (Bulgaria), or the area north of the river Danube, which they called Dacia, they imported from said areas timber, horses, salt, fish and gold. Considering that gold doesn't just lie around in ingots or in piles so the people must have had some kind of civilization and knowledge of the various metals. A very good example was so called "golden fleece" which should have given the Romans and the Greeks a clear understanding that there were advanced civilizations in those areas and not just barbarians nor Celts as they were calling them.

From the area we know today as "Russia or Scythia as Greeks and Romans called it, they imported grain, honey, hemp, nuts, hide and wax and from the Caucasus area they acquired iron. If I remember correctly, it was Pliny the Elder in 23 – 79 A.D. in Rome, who wrote about a kingdom way up in the north whose head of state was a queen. This queen must have been the Queen of the kingdom of Perma of which I mentioned before and of which the Finnish Epic of Kalevala as "The Northern Woman with Few Teeth".

The Huns came in the early 4th century A.D. The devastation of the vast area between the Ural Mountains and the Carpathian Mountains is fairly unknown in Western Europe. However, the Huns under Attila destroyed the Germanic Bastarnai civilization east of the Carpathian Mountains. The Bastarnais must have been in close contact with their relatives, the Goths, west of the Carpathians, because the archaeological finds from the burial grounds in Brest-Trishin, west of the river Bug, introduce us to the culture of the Germanic tribes including the Goths. That in my opinion is an indication of how the Huns found out about the existence of the Germanic tribes west of the Carpathian Mountains. The Huns onslaught dislodged most of the Germanic tribes from their ancestral lands in the east and central Europe. And to escape the Huns' atrocities were forced to migrate south-east, south, north and west. The whole fabric of European population and civilization was changed.

One part of the Goths migrated south-east and were later known as Ostro-Goths. The Thuringers, one part of Goths, and a few smaller tribes moved south to the Balkan and Po Valley.

The Vandals, Burgundians, Franks and one part of the Goths migrated westwards, so that the Vandals ended up in Spain together with some of the Goths, who were later known as Visi-Goths (West-Goths). The Burgundians and a part of the Goths migrated to eastern Gallia and the Franks moved to the river Main where they established a town called Frankfurt am Main.

One part of the Goths was forced to migrate to Schone in the southern part of today's Sweden, and also to the island of Gotland where they created overpopulation.

The name Schone comes most likely from the Gothic name for a barn because the area was, and still is very fertile, and was a bread barn to the Goths. Even today the name for a barn in German is "die Scheune" pronounced as "shoine". In Schone the Goths built a town with fortifications against the constant raids of the Jutes from Jutland and called it "Gothenburg", in Swedish Goteborg.

All Germanic tribes which were forced by the Huns to migrate further to the west, pushed the local Germanic tribes and the Celts to move westwards and to Gallia, and changed the traditional trading patterns of the merchants.

Who were the Celts?

The name "Celt" is derived from the Greek word "Keltoi" which means "barbarian". For some unexplainable reasons the Greeks and Romans called all other Europeans "Keltois" regardless that they had their own culture and their own civilization. They even used Runes as a way of communication. True; these so called "celts" and "barbarians" treated their women as equals and didn't practise polygamy. They did not have homosexuals, neither did they have venereal diseases which were brought to Europe from the "civilized" Middle-East by retreating army of Alexander the Great, and were later spread by the Roman army. However, if that is considered as a criterion to label people as Celts and Barbarians, I gladly accept said classification.

The first historical account about the "Celts" comes from northern Italy around 400 B.C. when unknown group of people, whom the Romans called "barbarians", came down from the Alps and dislodged the Etruscans from the fertile Po Valley, and at the same time pushed the Etruscans from history. As the Romans tried to help their friends the Etruscans, they got into trouble with the Barbarians.

The historical account tells us that; "The Barbarians lay siege to the Capitol of the still young Roman Empire for seven months which led to negotiations, whereby the Celts promised to leave for a tribute of one thousand pounds of gold. When the gold was weighed the Romans accused the Celts of cheating with faulty weights on which the Celt's leader Brennan threw his sword into the balance and uttered the historical words "vae victis", woe to the defeated.

In my opinion this attitude has been enforced throughout the whole human history, even in biblical times, but only Europeans have been accused of being Barbarians and Celts.

Did the civilized Greeks during the conquests of Alexander the Great, or the cultured Romans, during their invasions in the Middle-East and Egypt ask the people in a civilized manner to give up everything without resistance? Or did the Babylonians ask the Jews politely to come into captivity? According to the Roman historian Diodorus Siculus "the Barbarians or Celts wore brightly coloured and embroidered shirts with trousers called "braces" and cloaks, fastened at shoulder with brooch, heavy in winter and light in summer. These doaks are striped or chequered in design with separate checks close together in various colours".

Considering this description of the Celts' clothing and comparing it with the clothing of the Tocharians of 1500 B.C. I believe that the Celts of the 400 B.C. and Tocharians were descendants of those white Europeans who remained in Europe during the Ice Age and drew the pictures of wild animals in the caves in France.

As the Huns' invasion stopped in the late 4th century the eastern part of Europe and central "Russia" were devastated and the Germanic tribes of these areas were forced to desert their homelands.

Around the beginning of the 5th century the Slavs started to occupy the lands which were previously populated by the Germanic people. The Slavs, who migrated east of the Carpathian Mountains where the Bastarnai people had lived, were called by other Slavs as "u kraintsy" (people who live at the frontier), and the Slavs who migrated to the area west of Carpathian Mountains were called "poliany" (people who live on the plains). Those who migrated all the way to the Baltic Sea were called "pomerany" (people who live by the sea)".

All these migrations had a detrimental effect on the trading routes and practises of the Germanic merchants because the migrations interrupted the normal flow of goods and wares from the Baltic Sea area, and "Russia".

CHAPTER VI

Considering that there weren't any written records of the people who populated the vast area we know today as Russia, Ukraine, Belarus, the Baltic area and the whole Fenno-Scandia the western historians weren't and still aren't able to give a true picture of the people who populated the area.

Now as the Soviet Union is gone and Russia has began to "open the door" for the Western scientists and historians, the picture has started slowly to emerge, because the long oppressed Finno-Ugrians are beginning to be interested in their own heritage and culture.

The central and southern area between the Carpathian Mountains and the river Don was mainly populated by the Germanic people before the Huns invasion, as mentioned earlier.

The area east of the river Don to the Ural Mountains was populated mainly by Finno-Ugrian tribes who also populated the whole northern part of north-eastern Europe, the Baltic area and Fenno-Scandia.

This clearly indicated that at the time Herodotus visited the area in the 5th century B.C. there were many tribes, even nations, which he lumped all together and labelled them as Scythians.

This label has stuck with most western historians.

It was also mentioned that the Greeks called all other nations and people "Keltois", and the Romans called them "Barbarians", even the highly civilized Bastarnais regardless that their civilization rivalled those of Greeks and Romans.

A very good example of this is the Runic script which was used by Bastarnais before the Huns wiped them out of history.

The Runic script which was used by all Indo-Germanic people, the Finno-Ugrians and the “Celts” must have been already at that time very old, and therefore was replaced in the 4th century A.D. by Gothic script. To establish the exact time when the Indo-Europeans started to use the Runic characters, is next to impossible. According to my understanding, for example, the “sun wheel” or “swastika” was derived by crossing two Runic SUN characters. And that the Runic characters had been found on rocks in Bronze Age which ended around 1000 B.C. and also that from the Tocharians’ graves was found a clay bowl with “swastika” decoration. And on the top of that, the Germanic and Finnic merchants even in the early years of migration needed means of communication, and used Runes, as mentioned before. Therefore we have to admit that there were civilizations in Europe long before the Greeks, Romans and Middle-Eastern civilizations were introduced to the Europeans.

Yet even today we are duped to believe that civilizations started in Greece, Rome and the Middle-East. Though western European history is intertwined with the Roman conquests, and those conquests weren’t done with “silken gloves”. And later with the Roman Church which kept records of all happenings for its own activities.

There hardly were any written documents available of the eastern Europe, especially as the ex-Soviet Union withheld most of the information for political reasons. This doesn’t mean that the rest of Europeans lived like ignorant savages.

To find out more about the eastern and northern Europeans we have to rely on the rich oral stories, legends and folklores, which are supported by archaeological finds, especially, the archaeological artefacts which were found by the ex-Soviet archaeologists, and also on the Runic writings in the Baltic area and Fenno-Scandia.

The migration and colonization of the European wilderness happened very slowly and lasted many millenniums. At the time as the Finno-Ugrian or Finnic tribes started to settle the central and northern Europe, the northern “Russia”, Baltic area and Fenno-Scandia were mostly covered by dense forests. Therefore the Finnic people became very skilled in woodworking and considering the innumerable lakes and rivers they also became expert boat builders.

In those days the Finnic people were mainly fishers, hunters and gatherers, only very few of them were merchants. The so-called “slash and burn” agriculture was the only kind of agriculture people knew at that time, which was also used by all Europeans.

In slash and burn agriculture the trees were felled in a selected area. The best logs were used to build houses, boats, shingles for roofing and splints to make baskets. From birch bark they made backpacks and even shoes and in the time of famine they added pine bark into the dough to make bread, though they knew that it didn’t give any nourishment; it filled the stomach for another day.

The smaller trees together with the big branches were cut and stored to be used as firewood to heat the houses during the winter, and for cooking. Then the stumps were pried out and those which contained resin were used to obtain tar in charcoal pits, all other leftovers were then burned. When the burned area cooled off, they levelled the ashes with a wooden rake and planted the seeds.

After they had harvested in the fall the plot was left to “rest” for a year or two, and another adjacent area was prepared for the same purpose. This was repeated until they had cleared enough land for domesticated animals. Then they went to people who lived on the plains to acquire domesticated animals through bartering furs, honey, tar, wax and various items which they had made out of wood, such as baskets, backpacks, spoons, spatulas etc. As their children grew and wanted to start their own homesteads they moved usually by boats using rivers as “highways”.

Similarly the European pioneers settled and built later the North America with the addition of the iron plough, the technology which they had brought from Europe.

In the area we know today as “Russia”, the Baltic area and Fenno-Scandia north of 60 degrees parallel, the climate was and still is very harsh, therefore the land didn’t yield much sustenance of life. However, regardless of the unfriendly environment, there are a few archaeological finds in Finland and Scandinavia dating back to 7300 B.C. in the form of fishing nets, sleigh pieces and pieces of boats. But in southern Scandinavia and the Baltic area, south of 60 degrees parallel, there were finds dating back to 9000 B. C. and older.

As the population grew the Finnic people also became tribes and even nations as they colonized the wilderness of northern “Russia”, the Baltic area and in the northern part of Fenno-Scandia all the way to the Atlantic Ocean in Norway. Therefore they were fully familiar with the lands, lakes, rivers, and especially with the people of the whole area who were their relatives.

Having the same ancestors they also spoke a similar language though with different dialects and therefore they were able to communicate with each other, and had established good trading relations, not only with their own people, but also with their Indo-Germanic neighbours in the south.

I believe that as the so called Indo-Europeans started to migrate to Europe they belonged to two major language groups, the Indo-Europeans and the Finno-Ugrians.

The Finno-Ugrians split into two separate groups, the Ugric and the Finnic. The Ugric was the smaller group which migrated along the eastern side of the Ural Mountains, and the larger group called herein Finnic, migrated along the western side of the Ural Mountains. During the millenniums both groups grew into several tribes and even nations.

The eastern group, or the Ugrians, evolved into three tribes. which are known as Ob Ugrians because they settled around the river Ob in Siberia.

These tribes are known today as:

1. Hungarians about 10.2 million
2. Hanti (Finns call them Ostjaks) about 20.000
3. Mansi (Finns call them Voguls) about 7.000

Hungarians were fishers, hunters, traders and horse breeders. They migrated later to central Europe where they found a wide open range suitable for horse breeding and named it “Pusta”. I believe that the Slavs adopted the word “pusta” to mean “empty”, because “Pusta” was empty of trees.

The Hungarians are today the biggest Finno-Ugrian nation.

Hanti and Mansi were fishers, hunters, gatherers and reindeer herders. They remained in Siberia around the river Ob.

From the larger group which migrated along the western side of the Ural Mountains:

4. Liivs about 3 million.
5. Laetts (Latts) about 2.4 million.

Were the first ones to split from the main Finnic group and migrated all the way to the Baltic area where they still live. They are known today as Lithuanians and Latvians, respectively. Considering that they were in constant contact with their Indo-Germanic neighbours to the south their languages have only few traces of Finnic dialects. On top of that, I believe, that some of the biblical Hittites, who were Indo-Germanic origin and who crossed the straight of Bosphorus and migrated north, assimilated also with the northerners, the Liivs and Laetts (Latts). The similarities in their surnames are striking, as mentioned earlier.

I also believe that the migration of the Finnic and Germanic groups started as a “trickle” which increased in numbers during several centuries if not millennia. Therefore to have a clear picture of all Finnic tribes which migrated along the western side of the Ural Mountains, following the river Volga, we have to start from the south-eastern corner of “Russia”.

Such Finnic tribes were:

6. Mari about 670.000
7. Mordvins (Erza and Moksa) about 1.2 million
8. Udmurts about 750.000
9. Komi (Komi and Komi Permyaks) about 430.000
10. Veps about 810.000
11. Carelians (Viena and Aunus Carelians) 138.000
12. Izhor (Inkeri) numbers not available.
13. Merja, wiped out from history
14. Vatja numbers not available
15. Viro (Estonia) about 1 million
16. Finland's Finns about 5.5 million

The numbers of populations in the ex-soviet Union were obtained from Russia after the so called “perestroika”.

MARI

The Finns call the Mari tribe “Tseremissit”. They lived originally on both sides of the delta of river Volga all the way to the Caucasus Mountains. They were fishers, hunters and traders. Keeping in mind, that all Finnic people greet each other with the word “terve” or “tere”, which means “health”, the Mari people greet each other with the word “shalom”. This makes one wonder whether they are possibly related to the Mari people who were known in biblical times as Hittites? The Mari people on the north side of the Caucasus Mountains were later forced to move further north from their original homeland, closer to the Ural Mountains. Their present capital city is Joskar Ola.

MORDVINS

Mordvins were divided by the Soviets into two tribes or nations, namely Erzae (Erza) and the Moksa, because of their different dialects and culture. They both had their own written languages. The Mordva people were farmers, horse and cattle breeders, and well known traders. Their capital city is Saransk. It has been suggested that the name of the present Russian capital city Moscow comes from the Mordvins' language, because they used the area as a place of pasture for their cows which they called “moshka”, which meant critter (creature).

UDMURTS

The Finnish name for Udmurts is Votjaks who live in the densely forested area at the base of the Ural Mountains north of the river Volga where it bends to the west. They were fishers, hunters and traders. Their capital city is Izhevsk. Udmurts belong to the so called PERMA nations, and are closely related to the Komi-Finns.

KOMI-FINNS

The Finnish name for the Komi-Finns is "Syrjaanit". They were also divided by the Soviets into two tribes, namely the Komi and the Komi-Permyak. The Komi-Finns live north of their relatives the Udmurts. Their capital city is Syktyvkar, which is situated north of 60 degrees parallel at the Northern Dvina. They also belong to the Perma nations.

The Komi-Finns were fishers, hunters, reindeer herders and in those days very well known traders. They are said to have traded to the east, all the way to the east side of the Ural Mountains with the Ob-Ugrians, and to the west with the Finnic Carelians on the western shores of Lake Ladoga, where they established a trading post called Korela.

Traveling by boats from their capital city Syktyvkar along the Northern Dvina and its contributory river Sukhona, the Komi merchants were able to reach Lake Onega, and from there by the river Svir (Syvari) they reached Lake Ladoga. From Lake Ladoga they traveled south along the river Olhava (in Russian "Volkhov"), they were able to reach Lake Ilmen (in Finnish "Ilmajari"), where they established a trading post called Olhava (Rurik and his men called it "Holmgard"), this trading post was later renamed by the Russians as Novgorod. In excavations during the Soviet era it was established that the city of Olhava (Novgorod) had been destroyed by fire five times and always rebuilt due to its favourable location. The archaeologists had found pieces of birch bark on which were written words in Komi language in peculiar "Cyrillic alphabet", which in my opinion points to the fact that the original population of the town was of Finnic origin.

Komi-Finns adopted the Russian Orthodox Christianity fairly early.

Therefore their Bishop Tapani had to devise for them their own alphabet based on Cyrillic alphabet, and translated passages from the Bible in the 13th century into Komi Finnish around the same time as John Wycliff translated passages from the Bible into English language in Gothic script.

The Cyrillic alphabet is attributed to St. Cyril the 9th century apostle to the Slavs (827-867 A.D.), which points to the fact, that there wasn't much of Slavic language spoken among the Finnic tribes in "Russia" around the time as Rurik ventured with his men into the area.

It was pointed out that the Udmurts (Votjaks) and the Komi-Finns ("Syrjaanit") belonged to the Perma nations. Perma was a kingdom in northern "Russia", and encompassed many Finno-Ugrian tribes on both sides of the Ural Mountains. How many of the Finno-Ugrian tribes belonged to the Perma Kingdom is not quite clear because most of them have the same stories, legends and folklores.

The Perma Kingdom could have been the same northern kingdom which was mentioned by the Roman historian Pliny the Elder as mentioned before.

The fact that there aren't any statistics of the kings and queens is simply because the middle-eastern hereditary kingship was unknown to the Finno-Ugrians. All their kings and queens and tribal leaders were elected by the freeborn men on the "stones" and were known as "Valittu" (Elected), therefore they all considered that they didn't have any superiors. This in my opinion clearly indicates that they had a highly advanced "democracy".

Their freemen sat on the stones which were set in a circle to indicate that they all were equal, the same way as we have read stories about the King Arthur's round table.

These stones circles have been found in the Fenno-Scandia, Baltic States and in "Russia"

Considering all these facts the Finnic merchants must have been fully familiar with the Runic characters otherwise they wouldn't have been able to trade with the highly advanced Bastarnais and Goths.

VEPS

Veps are called by the Finns as “Vepsa”. They live south of the river Svir (“Syvari”), between the Lakes Ladoga and Onega. They were a fairly large tribe and were fishers, hunters, gatherers and traders. They established together with the Komi traders the well known trading post of Olhava (Novgorod) and the shores of Lake Ilmen (“Ilmajarvi”).

CARELIANS

Carelians are comprised of two groups namely the White Sea Carelians and the Aunus Carelians. They lived mainly north of the river Svir (“Syvari”) the Cola Peninsula included. They were fishers, hunters reindeer herders and traders.

IZHOR

Izhor, (in Finnish “Inkeri” and in Swedish “Inger”) was a very small tribe whose living area was between Lake Peipus (“Chudskoye Ozero”) and the Lake Ladoga. Their neighbours to the south were the Vatja people.

VATJA

I believe that the Vatja people split from the Mordvins at the point where the river Oka joins the Volga river, and where the city of Gor’kiy is located today. The river Oka is contributory river of the Volga River and means in Finnic languages “a branch” or “a thorn”. By travelling up the stream of the river Oka, the Vatja tribe settled in the general area where many rivers in “Russia” and the Baltic area have their sources.

MERJA

From Merja tribe there aren’t many records available because either they were wiped out by their enemies, or they adopted the Slavic language early in their history and therefore disappeared from history.

VIRO (ESTONIA)

Viro today is known as Estonia, and it is the most northern state of the Baltic countries; to the west there is the Baltic Sea, to the north the Gulf of Finland, and to the east the Lake Peipus.

FINLAND’S FINNS

North of the Gulf of Finland are the Finnic people we know today as Finns. They include several Finnic tribes such as Carelians, Savo (in Swedish “Savolax”), Kainu, Hame (in Swedish “Tavast”), Uusimaa (in Swedish “Nyland”), Varsinais Suomi, Satakunta, Pohjalaiset (in Swedish “Ostrobothnians”), and in the north live the Sami people, or better known as Laplanders whose language is related to the Finnish language.

THE FINNIC TRIBES OF SWEDEN AND NORWAY

The Finnic people who lived in the central and northern Sweden and Norway assimilated early with the Indo-Germanic Goths and Jutes and possibly also with the Celts, and disappeared from the history as Finno-Ugrians. According to my understanding the sole indication of their existence is that in Norway there is an area called Finmarken.

In the beginning of this chapter I mentioned that the central and southern area between the Carpathian Mountains and the River Don was populated mainly by Indo-Germanic people, but due to the strong "russification" programs of various "Russian" governments, and especially the secrecy of the ex-Soviet Union, which tried to project all Soviet Union's people as Slavic "Russians", or as the widely publicized Scythians, the names of the Germanic tribes and nations are unknown to us. However, all these tribes and nations and the trading routes were fully familiar to the Germanic merchants especially to the Goths and the Saxons, who had traded with them for centuries even before the Hun's invasion.

It was also mentioned earlier that the lakes and rivers were utilized as "highways" for transportation. Most major rivers in northern "Russia" and the Baltic area have their sources in the same area such as: The Volga is the longest river which flows through the whole northern and eastern "Russia" to the Caspian Sea, and therefore became the main trading route of the Finnic merchants, with the merchants of the "Silk Road" and the merchants of the Middle-East.

The Dniepr which gets a part of its water from the Pinsk Marshes flows into the Black Sea and was well-known to the Goths and the Liivs (Lithuanians) who had good trading relations with the Bastarnais. The Neumunas River flows through the whole of Lithuania into the Kurish Lagoon ("Kursiu Bay") in the Baltic Sea.

The Daugava River, which is called by the "Russians" as Western Dvina, flows also westward through Latvia into the Baltic Sea.

The Velikoya River flows northward through the Lake Pskov (in Finnish "Pihkova") into the Lake Peipus (Chudskoye Ozero).

All these major rivers were well known to the Germanic merchants as the archaeological findings in Gotland have proved, and then came the Huns' invasion.

The Huns invasion didn't have a direct devastating effect on the Finnic tribes except maybe on those Mordvians and Mari people who lived in the direct line of the Huns' path. Perhaps because they were at that time very few, their areas were sparsely populated and they didn't have any great riches, or prosperous towns which would have attracted Huns' attention and greed. Therefore, I believe, the Huns left them mainly in peace and attacked the rich Germanic Bastarnais and Goths.

The word of riches travelled even in those days fairly fast and attracted many greedy people. For millenniums the Indo-Germanic people had lived in peace and in harmony with their Finnic neighbours especially with such tribes as Mari, Mordvins, Merja, Vatja, Liivs and Laetts (Latts). Therefore many Bastarnai and Goth people must have fled to the north where they knew their neighbours the Finnic people lived to escape the Huns' fury. Later, after the Huns had left they didn't see any need to return to their ancestral homeland especially as the Slavs had started to occupy the lands sometime in the 5th century A.D. (C. E. = Christian Era)

CHAPTER VII

When the Huns' onslaught stopped in 375 A.D. the east side of the Carpathian Mountains the area we know today as Ukraine was totally in ruins.

The Germanic Bastarnai Kingdom was decimated and disappeared from history as previously mentioned.

West of the Carpathian Mountains the whole of central Europe was devastated. It has already been mentioned that most of the Germanic nations and tribes were forced to move to other parts of Europe. Those who remained in the devastated areas assimilated later with the Slavs, who had started to occupy the mainly deserted lands.

In many history books, even in films, the Germanic nations and tribes have been projected as primitive brutes. For example, the Goths have been accused of being ignorant "barbarians". Yet before the Huns invasion, according to my understanding, they had a highly civilized kingdom which was elected by the freemen same way as in King Arthur's time in England.

The Goths came up with their own alphabet to replace the ancient Runes. This alphabet was later adopted by most of the Germanic nations and tribes and was even used by the Baltic countries and Finland. The Gothic architecture with its steep roofs spread all over the central, western and northern Europe. In the cold climates with heavy snow falls, flat roofs, with the then available building materials, would have caved in under the heavy melting snow.

Considering all this knowledge and high civilization of the Germanic people, it is safe to assume, that the Germanic people in the whole of central, western and northern Europe had well-organized and strong merchant colonies with well-protected trading routes. All this was destroyed by the invasion of the Huns.

And then, in the 5th century, came the defeat of the Roman occupation in Gallia.

During the Roman occupation of Gallia (France) most of the central and northern Europe an trade with the Roman Empire was done through the Hainault (Haino) merchant Patricians.

They lived at that time around the English Channel on the mainland side at the Strait of Dover. From Britain they also acquired tin, iron, copper, wool and hides for the Roman merchant Patricians. The Roman historian Tacitus mentioned in 61 A.D. about Londonium (London), as being an important trading post. By the 2nd century it was a thriving merchants' city.

Though the Huns invasion didn't affect the trading practises of the merchants with Britain, The Franken's war against the Roman occupation changed all their trading activities.

At the time the Roman Empire began to decline many Germanic tribes which were forced by the Huns to move to Gallia, started to be fed up with the Roman yoke and joined the Franken King Chlodwig "Clovis" (481-511) in his quest to defeat the Roman Consul in Gallia.

The Franken's King Chlodwig must have been fully aware, that the Germanic Vandal's King, who bore the title Rex Vandalarum et Alanorum, which indicates that he was also the King of Vandals' factions the Hasdingi and the Silingi, had assembled a combined force in Spain with the Alans, Ostro-Goths, Visi-Goths and the Germanic Suevi tribes of 80.000 men some 60 years earlier, under the leadership of Geiseric, and had been very successful in fighting the Romans in Africa. Therefore the Franken's King Chlodwig welcomed the other Germanic tribes, defeated the last Roman Consul in Gallia and established the Franken Kingdom "Frankreich" in 486 A.D.

To fight the Franken's the Roman Consul was forced to pull out the Roman legions from England. This led to the fact that the Celts and the Picts started to harass the Angles, Saxons, Friesians and Jutes who had migrated from the mainland during many centuries for various reasons and had populated mainly the uninhabited area in Britain.

Therefore Vortigern the King of Kent invited Saxon mercenaries to fight the Celts and Picts to bring peace among the people who had suffered from the constant raids, especially the merchants who had experienced great hardships. However, after a few years, due to a dispute regarding their salaries, the Saxon mercenaries seized the power and established a Saxon Kingdom in Kent around 500 A.D.

This action was a beneficial not only to the local merchants, but also to the Germanic merchants on the mainland of whose trading activities the Saxon mercenaries were fully aware.

On the mainland in Gallia, where the Germanic tribes had established under the leadership of Chlodwig the so called Franken Kingdom "Frankreich", today known as France the situation wasn't much better because the merchants had lost the protection of the Roman Laws and legions, until in 496 A.D.

Chlodwig accepted Christianity which brought peace among the people, the situation became somewhat better and was welcomed by the merchants who had suffered great losses because of the wars.

The merchants were strictly against wars because they brought devastation and misery for people and interrupted their trading activities.

However, in a peaceful environment the population began to grow and because the "slash and burn" agriculture created a deficiency of possible farming land which could sustain the growing population, the people started to migrate in search of a new land, In the Kingdom of Franken, as the Roman yoke was broken, the Germanic tribes started to prosper and grow. Therefore as Charlemagne (Karl der Grosse) the King of Franken (768-814), who was also the Emperor of the Holy Roman Empire, expanded his kingdom in the north to the river Elbe. The Danish (Jutes) King Godfred challenged him in 808 A.D. but because they were a much smaller nation the Danes were unable to defeat the Carolingian Empire.

I believe that the whole dispute between the Danes (Jutes) and the Carolingians was an economical rivalry. The area which was between the rivers Rhine and Elbe which Charlemagne annexed to his empire, must have been a lucrative source of income for the Danes. We have to remember that Bremen which is situated at the river Weser and Hamburg at the river Elbe, at that time called Hammaburg, were forced to pay high contributions as friendship payments to the Danes.

When exactly Bremen and Hamburg became trading posts, is unknown.

Considering their favourable locations, they most likely were bartering places long before they became trading posts. That takes us back to the time before the Romans occupied Gallia, otherwise it would have been impossible for the Hainault (Haino) merchant Patricians to trade together with Friesian, Saxon and other Germanic merchants in 14 A.D. in horses, hides, leather, furs and amber which were in high demand in Rome.

Therefore as the Danes (Jutes) lost this lucrative area to collect taxes and friendship payments from the merchants, they sacked the well known trading post of Rerik in 808 A. D. And forced its merchants to move to Hedeby which was situated about 3 kilometres west of the city of Schleswig on the Jutland peninsula.

Rerik was an ancient trading post located on the south shores of the Baltic Sea on a narrow peninsula about 35-40 kilometres west from the later day city of Rostock and known today as Ostbad Rerik.

The central area of the southern shores of the Baltic Sea, were at that time, populated by Goths and their relatives the Saxons.

To the east of the Goths were the Finnic tribes the Liivs and the Latts (Lithuanians and Latvians respectively). To the west of the Saxons were the Angles and the Jutes. All these nations and tribes had an access to the Baltic Sea, and therefore they must have had trading relations for centuries dating back to prehistoric times, and therefore it is next to impossible to pinpoint the time when the trading post of Rerik was established. All we know is that already in 14 A.D. the Romans had acquired amber from the Germanic merchants among many other commodities. It is well known fact that in those days amber was obtainable only from the south-eastern area of the Baltic Sea.

After Godfred the King of the Danes (Jutes) had founded a city called Hedeby and forced the Germanic merchants from Rerik to move into his newly established trading post. The situation in central and northern Germania had drastically changed because the Slavs had colonized the previously Germanic area. Therefore the trading activities had worsened which resulted in lower trading volume and lower profits to the merchants and to the local inhabitants. This forced King Godfred to renew his raids against the Franks. According to history books these raiders were known as “Normen”. Note: not Vikings. Finally Charlemagne (Karl der Grosse) gave to the “Normen” a piece of land in France because as a Christian he was against unnecessary violence and bloodshed. He understood that Danes (Jutes) couldn't make a decent living with their growing population in their own land. This piece of land we know today as Normandy, and not as Vikingland. Though this stopped the “Normen” raids into the Frankish Kingdom, it didn't pacify the Danes who had turned against their previous neighbours, the Angles in Anglia.

The Angles were a smaller Germanic tribe who originally lived at the base of the Jutland peninsula and were closely related to the Saxons. Due to the lack of fertile land they were forced to move to lowlands in the central-east part of the British Isles and carved out for them an area which they called Anglia. In the meantime the Saxons had established a Saxon Kingdom in Kent around 500 A.D. and had claimed most of the central and southern parts of Britain, so that around 650 – 830 A.D. there were seven kingdoms in Britain, the strongest of which was the Saxon Kingdom of Wessex.

All this didn't go unnoticed by the Danes who started to extend their raids against Anglia, creating anxieties among the Germanic merchants. Then as they occupied Anglia and collected from the Angles high taxes which they called “danegeld” and started to expand their holdings on the British Isles by raiding the Saxons' areas, the Saxon King of Wessex, Alfred the Great (871 – 899 A.D.) stopped them. He helped the Angles to get rid of the Danes and the trade with the Germanic merchants could flourish again.

We have to remember that on mainland the Germanic tribes had populated the whole central and northern Europe up to 60 degrees parallel, and north of the 60 degrees was colonized by the Finnic and Sami people and also that before the Celts, Angles, Saxons, Friesians and some Jutes came to the British Isles, the Isles were sparsely populated by Britons and Picts, the whole area was covered by dense forest. Therefore, considering all these facts, there was no such nation or tribe as “Vikings”. The whole concept of Vikings sounds to me as another Scandinavian “trolla” story or maybe the Irish “Leprechauns” would describe them better.

In Western Europe the raiders were called “Normen”. In Ireland they were called “Norsemen” which is most likely derived from the word “Norsk” (northerner) and in the east they were called “Varjaags” and “Varangians”. Most likely only in Anglia, if even there, the raiders were called “Vikings”, because the Angles came from Jutland and had experienced the brutalities of the “i viken” (in the bay) pirates. I believe, as it has been suggested by some of the historians, that the name Viking, in Scandinavian languages is pronounced “veeking”, came from the “i viken” pirates who were doing the bays or “veeking”. So that, in my opinion, the question is of the English pronunciation which has made the imagination to fly.

In any event these pirates ravaged European coasts for about 250 – 300 years and came from three Scandinavian countries, Denmark, Sweden and Norway.

The restless elements were finally pacified by three events:

First, the Germanic farmers came up with an iron plough and people could till the soil which previously, with the old “slash and burn” method, was considered useless.

Secondly, Christianity began to make inroads among the people.

Thirdly, the influence of the brutal heathen religions started to decline.

In the Franken kingdom already Chlodwig (Clovis) was baptized into Christianity and at the time of Charlemagne (Karl der Grosse) the whole Franken Kingdom was Christianized. As Charlemagne was crowned by the Roman Pope as the Emperor of the Holy Roman Empire in 800 A.D. Christianity started to take hold of Europe. Danish King Harald was Christianized in 960 A.D. Norwegian King Olaf Trygvason in 1000 A.D. and the Swedish infant King Olav in 1008 A.D. Disregarding all this, the people were still stubbornly hanging on to their ancient heathen believes. So that for example, in Upsala, Sweden, the mighty heathen temple which glittered with gold, had high halls with idols and holy groves with human and animal corpses hanging on sacrificial trees, was still very much in use about eight decades after the infant King Olav was baptized.

However, because the Baltic and Fenno-Scandian merchants had trading relations with the Christianized Germanic merchants they became the first ones familiar with Christianity, earlier than the rest of population, as Bishop Ilmari Salomaa points out in his book, "The History of the Finnish Church". As the local population saw the Christian merchants and especially their craftsmen, whom the merchants had brought with them into their trading posts, were prospering, the local population started also to accept Christianity. This was warmly welcomed by the merchants because the local heathen people started to abandon their inhuman ways. Therefore Christianity became a choice rather than a must, with the exception of Norway where King Olaf forced the people to accept Christianity with sword and fire, Later the Christianization of the heathen Slavs, the Baltic people and the Finnic tribes by the Crusaders was done in a fairly peaceful manner.

As Christianity spread, the Runic characters, which in many cases had religious meanings, were also replaced by the Gothic script, because Bishop Ulfilas had translated passages of the Bible into Germanic language.

However, in the Franken Kingdom, which had been under Roman rule, the Runic characters were discarded much earlier than in the rest of Europe. Most likely because the Germanic tribes which lived in Gallia had been under the Roman occupation for centuries, and therefore had adopted the Latin based language which we know today as French, and therefore had started to use the Latin alphabet. People in the rest of Europe despised the Romans for their constant raids to obtain slaves from the so called "barbarians", and therefore resisted everything that reminded them of the Romans. The latest to change their Runic characters into Gothic script were the Fenno-Scandians.

As the trading situation in Britain started to improve, the Germanic merchants experienced difficulties in the Franken Kingdom. At that time as Chlodwig established the Franken Kingdom the merchants lost the protection of the Roman Laws and Legions. The new rulers were disorganized and tried to reap as much benefits as possible for themselves rather than for the common good. There was no central government to speak of which would have recognized the privileges and the ducal rank of the of the Hainault (Haino) merchants. In those days the merchants were considered as artisans or craftsmen who worked for their living, and therefore were looked down upon by the fighting classes from which came most of the rulers such as Kings, Dukes, Margraves, Counts, Barons and military leaders. However, it was the merchant class which was literate, and as in all trades, the father taught his sons his own skills. Therefore, for example, as the rulers who were in most cases illiterate needed to write a letter or a proclamation or to have them read to them. It was usually someone who came from merchants' family who performed said task. Therefore many merchants' sons became scribes and also advisors to the rulers.

In those days every male at the age of fifteen was considered to be ready for the battlefield, and therefore they had to practise and perfect their fighting abilities, rather than learn how to read and write. However, the merchants' sons had to be literate to be able to continue their fathers' trade, to join them around the age of sixteen on their trade ventures.

The ordinary people or the common people were mostly illiterate simply because the life was very tough, just to earn the daily bread for the whole family required all peoples' effort including even children. We have to remember that in those days most of the people didn't have surnames, for even the rulers used only their first names and the name of their duchy, county or the name of the area which was their domain. This mostly left the merchants who needed a surname, or the name of their city for the continuity of their and their sons' trade activities. As their descendants went to foreign land they had to identify themselves as being from a certain merchant's family, or a member of the city to gain the trust of the merchants in foreign lands, especially as written documents would have been worthless among people who spoke different languages. Therefore also transactions were sealed with a handshake.

To make his Franken Kingdom (Frankreich), which he had expanded in the north up to the river Elbe, more manageable, Charlemagne divided his kingdom into "Margraveships" and counties. The "Margraveships" were much larger than the counties, because they were on the borders of the Franken Kingdom (Frankreich) and marked the boundaries of his kingdom. They also had to raise an army in the time of an assault from the unfriendly neighbours therefore they acted as buffer states against the neighbouring countries. This created even more hardships for the merchants because the greedy Margraves and Counts charged high tolls for the privilege to pass through their lands. They also demanded payments for the right to trade with the people who lived in their domain, because they considered them to be their subjects.

If anyone tried to by-pass these payments he was executed without having a chance to defend himself, his goods and wares were confiscated by the land owner as a warning to others. It was the landowner who decided who had the right to trade in their domain. We have to remember that there was no competition in those days simply because there weren't many people who had literacy skills, or had the courage to venture into strange and unknown lands where in most cases strangers were unwelcomed and met with hostilities, even death.

After Charlemagne's death, the Franken Kingdom was divided in 843 A.D. to three separate states between his three sons. The Margraves and counts became even cockier and greedier which added more burden to all people in their domain, especially on the merchants. Because the Margraves and Counts considered the lands of their "Margraveships and Counties" respectively as belonging to them, finally the farmers became their tenants.

However, because of their constant skirmishes for more land and power they needed constantly more money which they had to borrow.

In the wake of Christianity Jews started to move first into the Franken Kingdom and from there to the rest of Europe and England. Among the Jews there were the so-called moneylenders who had made a "golden calf" of money and worldly possessions and therefore created a great deal of friction. In fact, they gave all Jews a bad name. In those days the Church prohibited money lending against interest because it considered such money lending as usury, but the Jews were permitted to do so because it was incorporated into their religion. However, as the moneylenders charged 40% - 60% interest many people who borrowed their money got into all kinds of trouble, as was mentioned earlier, at that time most of people were illiterate. And if a Count, a Margrave, a Duke or even a King who borrowed money from the moneylenders and didn't understand what 40% or 60% meant, and was unable to repay his loan with said interest; he simply reclaimed his pawns and possessions and kicked out the moneylenders from his domain.

If an illiterate farmer got into a similar trouble and was unable to repay his loan with interest and couldn't fulfill his obligation to his landlord, the landlord possessed the farmer's land, the farmer became a tenant and the money lender was expelled from the landlord's domain. Considering that in those days the Jews lived in their own communities, or ghettos, and were somehow related to each other, it was impossible to tell who was involved in the money lending scheme.

Therefore the landlord expelled all Jews from his lands, especially as they considered that the Jews were invaders who in the first place didn't even have the right to be on their lands.

Many "historians" still tend to put down the merchants accusing them of greed and monopolization, completely ignoring the fact that merchants never robbed anyone, always paid high taxes and steep tolls to the rulers for the rights and privileges, to pass through their lands and to trade with their people.

Same "historians" seem also to ignore the greed of the rulers who killed people and pillaged their lands they conquered without giving anything in return to the unfortunate people. They have also conveniently overlooked the facts that the rulers were autocrats who decided arbitrarily who may trade on their lands, and how much the merchants had to pay for the trading rights and privileges, without being able to say anything, because the rulers considered them to be commoners.

What concerns monopolization, the word monopoly was unknown in those days.

CHAPTER VIII

Before we analyze the development of the commercial activities in the Western Europe we have to examine the evolution of the commerce from bartering to organized trade.

The trading activities in Europe, as everywhere else, had started with bartering. Young, robust and fearless men dared by foot or by horseback to explore strange territories, which in many cases were infested by marauders, or were controlled by robber barons. They also braved uncharted bitter seas in small ships no bigger than boats, in the search of new trading opportunities, not knowing how they would be received. Especially the Baltic Sea which is very treacherous even for today's modern vessels and the area around it, where the people in the most cases shunned and hated strangers to the point that they killed without asking them reasons for their visits, as they had only bad experiences with strangers who came to rob, kill and take their children into slavery. Therefore it took a great deal of courage and guts for the Germanic merchants to approach the hostile shores. Many of them were killed, unknown to the world, even before they were able to reach the shores.

In some cases, if the waters froze early and merchants were forced to stay over the winter among people who didn't have any goodwill toward them, their hardships became almost unbearable.

The bartering places were usually located at rivers' deltas so that people who lived upstream had an easy access to the bartering places. We have to remember that in those days there weren't any roads and therefore the rivers and lakes were utilized as "highways".

After painstaking efforts and many lost lives the Germanic merchants were able to convince the people that they came in peace. Therefore they started to build bigger ships and bartering places became trading places. To identify themselves to the people they began to use red and white striped sails, so that they could be identified from far away before they reach the shores. However, this attracted also the attention of the robbers and pirates who became bolder and started to set obstacles to shipwreck the merchants' ships. In those days it was considered that what-so-ever was washed ashore by the sea "strandgut" belonged to the one who owned the shores as was mentioned earlier. Therefore the merchants were always on the lookout for robbers and pirates.

The pirates started also to use the ships with the striped sails which they had robbed from the merchants, to mislead the people to believe that they were peaceful merchants, but because they had too many men on their ships, people usually recognized them as robbers and welcomed them accordingly.

Many lives were lost in constant fights against the robber barons and pirates, and many cargoes were robbed from the merchants, therefore their profits were quite modest. However, they were born merchants who didn't stand behind counters waiting for customers but risked their lives in their quest for new trading opportunities.

As good bartering relations had been established people started to trust the Germanic merchants and accepted precious metals by their weight as payment for their wares, especially silver was in high demand but bronze and iron were also accepted. This led to the fact that bartering places became trading places where merchants established trading posts and depots, which were managed by their sons who hired Germanic artisans to take care of their many needs, and the trading posts became merchants' colonies. From these merchant colonies the young merchants went out to search for new bartering places under the supervision of their fathers, and in that way created a trading network down the centuries in all of Europe.

Similar methods had been used by their predecessors in Southern Europe, in the Middle-East and the Far-East where the merchants had created the well known "Silk Road". All these merchants were of European origin and marriages were arranged by the parents. I believe that the parents selected the spouses for their youngsters mainly from their own class, and therefore the merchants were related to each other for many millenniums.

In fact, among all classes the marriages were usually arranged by the parents, as they are even today in many parts of the world. Later there were laws which prohibited, for example, a person of noble birth to marry a commoner. Then as the craftsmen organized trade guilds they ordered that a person of any craft had to marry from their own craft to protect their craft's secrets. For example, a tailor's son had to marry another tailor's daughter, a baker's son had to marry another baker's daughter, a farmer's son another farmer's daughter etc. I believe that this order was also ordered for practical reasons, because a daughter of the same craft could help her husband in his trade as she had watched her own father work, and therefore knew many trade secrets. The merchants followed the same system because in most cases the merchant's daughter had also learned the literacy skill, and could help her husband in many chores, such as accounting and bookkeeping.

This class distinction was still in force in many European countries up to the 20th century. A very good example of class distinction was illustrated as late as at the end of the 19th century Finnish Carelia. A farmer's son by the name of Juho Lalluka, who as a young man was working in a merchant's warehouse, and aspired to become a store keeper, wanted to marry a sheriff's daughter. The father refused to give his daughter into marriage with a farmer's son on the grounds that the suitor came from a lower social class. Later the farmer's son became a very wealthy, well-known and highly respected merchant in Carelia, and became famous all over Finland.

In olden days not many people were able to participate in trading activities because most of the people were illiterate. And literacy was and is one of the most important skills for the merchants as cuneiform tablets clearly indicate, because they are mainly inventories of goods and wares. Neither did all merchants' sons physically qualify to continue their fathers' grueling trade, or just weren't interested to embark on the merchants' dangerous profession.

Due to their literacy skills and their families' social status, they became either high officials or rulers. We also have to remember that the transportation of goods was very cumbersome, time consuming and dangerous in totally lawless environments.

Therefore the merchants had to be strong and fearless to be able to protect themselves and their wares against robbers and pirates. Considering all these facts the merchants had to work together for a successful organized trade and therefore there couldn't be any competition.

For example, the Italian merchants who traveled by ships to Constantinople acquired Middle Eastern, and Far Eastern goods in Samarkand, where the Far Eastern merchants had brought them along the "Silk Road". In Samarkand the Middle Eastern merchants sold the western goods, which they had bought from the Italian merchants in Constantinople, to the Far Eastern merchants. The Italian merchants sold the Middle Eastern and Far Eastern goods which they had bought from the Middle Eastern merchants in Constantinople, to the Central European merchants, and acquired from them the Central and Northern European goods, which they sold to the Middle Eastern merchants in Constantinople. Similar trade was going on between the Central European and Northern European merchants.

The local merchants took care of their own trade and sold their local wares to the "International" (European) merchants. Who wouldn't have been to survive on "grass root" level in strange areas due to the robbers and pirates. Neither would the local merchants have been able to survive in foreign lands for the same reasons. Therefore the main factor for a successful trade, were the "International" merchants. Today these merchants are called "middlemen" and accused of protectionism and monopolization.

A very good confirmation of these trading arrangements was illustrated centuries later by Marco Polo's trip to China at the end of 13th century.

I have never read any explanations from historical books; how was it possible for Marco Polo to travel from Venice all the way to China, or even to know that such a place as China existed? Therefore I believe that he must have heard from Venetian merchants from where the exotic wares came which were available in the market places, and decided to sail in one of the merchants' ship to Constantinople where he met the Middle Eastern merchants from Armenia. In those days Armenia was fairly large country which included most of today's Iran, parts of Iraq and a great part of Turkey. I also believe that King Baldwin of Armenia, who was a Hainault (Haino) and related to the Venetian Patricians, knowing that Marco Polo came from Venice, advised his merchants to help Marco Polo to travel to Samarkand where they were well-known by the Far Eastern merchants, who had built the famous "Silk Road". In Samarkand Marco Polo met these Far Eastern merchants who helped him as a favour to the Armenian merchants, to travel along the "Silk Road all the way to China. I believe that without these merchants' help Marco Polo would not have survived his trip to China, because the marauders were constantly attacking the merchants' caravans. I also believe that Herodotus wouldn't have survived his trip to "Russia" more than 1500 years earlier, without the merchants' assistance.

You may have read how some of the "historians" are trying to convince people that this or that small town became so famous that merchants from all over the then-known world came to trade in these towns. However, those stories don't sound to me very convincing considering the total lawlessness. I cannot picture that the Far Eastern merchants who transported their wares on camels in caravans would have reloaded their wares into ships and would have become skilful navigators in the robbers and pirate infested environments, especially, as the so-called "fighting classes" wouldn't have protected the merchants whom they considered to be commoners.

It has also been mentioned in many historical books; how the rulers (landowners) demanded high contributions in the form of tolls and taxes from the merchants for the privilege to pass through their lands, and to trade with their subjects. Therefore all the stories about merchants coming from all over the then-known world are unrealistic and give the impression that they are fabrications of people who haven't been able to place themselves into the lawless times of that era.

I strongly believe that all exotic goods and wares which possibly were available in Western Europe at that time came through the same routes as they came centuries later in Marco Polo's time.

In ancient times the living conditions of ordinary people weren't much better than those of the slaves. For example, people who cultivated the lands (the farmers) in Southern and Central Europe, didn't own the land they cultivated, and therefore they had to surrender a part of their crops to the land owners, who considered the people, who lived on their lands, as subjects and commoners, including the craftsmen and the merchants. The farmers paid their contributions to the rulers in produce and meat, the craftsmen paid their share in ready-made products such as shoes, clothing etc., and the merchants paid in valuables usually in silver and gold by the weight.

A very good example of the rulers' arbitrary power was the case of King Godfred of Denmark as he sacked the trading post of Rerik in 808 A.D. and forced the merchants to move to Hedeby to be able to levy taxes on them.

Considering the harsh times and the polytheistic inhuman heathen religions with human sacrifices, the ordinary people and slaves embraced Christianity which gave them hope for a better life, and because this hope had a pacifying effect on the people, the merchants started to support it. First they supported it in secrecy because the polytheistic Emperors didn't want to give up their many gods. But as Emperor Constantine 1 (306 A.D. – 377 A.D.) converted into Christianity, the Christian Church achieved a legal status in the Roman Empire. Therefore the merchant Patricians of Rome, Venice, Florence and Pisa started to support the Church financially, especially, as some of their literate sons entered the priesthood, and became high officials in the church, even Popes.

We have to remember that in those days most of the nobilities were illiterate and therefore were unable to read the Bible to the illiterate ordinary people, and those of them who were literate usually considered themselves to be "better people", who didn't even bother to talk to ordinary folks whom they considered as lower class. This left only the merchants for whom the literacy skill was essential, and who were constantly in contact with all kind of people. Therefore the Church was forced to use the merchants' sons and daughters, who had learned at home to read and write, to read the Bible to the people, therefore many merchants' sons became priests in their early teens, some of them even in their pre-teen ages. All this was well known to the Germanic merchants especially to the Hainault (Haino) Patrician of the Germanic Nervii tribe who had centuries old trading and marital relations with the Italian merchant Patricians.

Then, as Chlodwig (Clovis) established around 500 A.D. the Franken Kingdom (Frankreich) and converted into Christianity the Germanic merchants welcomed the change, and started to support the Church for its pacifying effect on the previously heathen population. All this led to the fact that the Church started to depend on the merchant Patricians, not only financially, but also to have literate people working for the advancement of Christianity. This dependence led to the fact that the Church started to gain secular political power, and the Roman Empire became The Holy Roman Empire.

During the Roman time the Hainault (Haino) merchants were in a privileged position due to their close kingship with the Italian merchant Patricians of Rome, Venice, Florence and Pisa, these cities were Free Imperial City States, and their Patricians had a ducal rank. Therefore they were also Senators of the Roman Empire and the advisors of the Emperor.

However, as Chlodwig (Clovis) defeated the Roman Consul in Gallia, and formed the Franken Kingdom of the area we know today as France and Belgium, united the Germanic tribes and Celts into one kingdom, and divided the kingdom into counties according to the tribal areas. He also changed the name of Principum Hannoniae into French Hainaut. In the course of all these changes the Hainault (Haino) merchant Patricians lost their privileged status in the Franken Kingdom because the counts who considered themselves as “nobilities” looked down upon the merchants who worked hard for living, the same way as they did to all other artisans, completely disregarding that the Hainault (Haino) merchants had been equal to kings and princes for centuries, if not millenniums.

In the “Annales Historiae Illustrium Principum Hannoniae, or in French Chronique de Hainault, the Hainault origin were traced to the ancient City of Troy, and how they sailed through the Pillars of Herculaneum past Albion to the Low Countries where they built a city they called Beclis or Belges and instituted civil and ecclesiastical laws”.

To identify themselves the Hainault (Haino) Patrician adopted also six-petal flower as an identification insignia, because as trading relations lasted for centuries, the new generations had to be able to identify themselves to each other. This, in my opinion, points out that they had close relations with the Italian merchant Patricians for centuries. We also have to remember that the transactions were sealed with a handshake, and therefore it was very important to know with whom they were entering into agreements. In those days an imposter’s life was very short for usually they were put in pillory for a day or two, after which they were hanged or beheaded publicly.

All this, in my opinion, clearly indicates that the Hainault (Haino) merchant Patricians were highly advanced and righteous, and therefore were dissatisfied with the nobilities who were given too much power by the Franken Kings.

Later the nobility started to abuse their powers and charged outlandish tolls and taxes from the merchants for the privileges to pass through their counties and trade with their subjects.

CHAPTER IX

During the Roman occupation people had to pay taxes to Caesar and the merchants had to pay in addition to their taxes, contributions, and tolls for the privileges to trade and use Roman built roads for the transportation of their goods and wares. Said roads, in addition to the natural waterways were invaluable advantage to the Hainault (Haino) merchants over other Germanic merchants especially as the Hainault (Haino) merchants were closely related to the Italian merchant Patricians, and were citizens of the Roman Empire. And because of that they had the protection of the Roman Legions against the robbers who were freely marauding in the northern area which wasn’t occupied by the Romans, namely the area north of the rivers Danube-Rhine line which the Romans called Germania.

However, all this was lost as Chlodwig of the Franken Merovingian family (clan) established the Franken Kingdom in Gallia. The Franken Kingdom was divided into “margraveships and counties” , and the tribal leaders were installed as Margraves and Counts, who considered all merchants as commoners and treated them as they pleased, and revoked all privileges which the Hainault (Haino) merchants had during the Romans’ time.

For over three centuries the merchants had suffered from the greed of the fighting classes (nobility) who arbitrarily imposed heavy taxes, and tolls on the merchants for the privilege to pass through their lands, and to trade with their subjects. And who by constantly fighting for the supremacy to enlarge their own territories left behind pillaged tracts and devastation where the merchants had established good trading relations with the people to improve their living standards. The merchants knew from their centuries old trading experiences that as the people prosper, they will also advance accordingly, which was totally unknown to the “upstart” greedy nobility, who in many cases, didn’t even care about the common ordinary people.

As then Charlemagne expanded the Franken Kingdom in the north up to the river Elbe, Godfred the King of Denmark retaliated, but wasn’t able to defeat the Franken’s Merovingians. He therefore sacked in 808 A.D. the trading town of Rerik in Saxony in hope that by forcing the Germanic merchants of Rerik to move to his newly established town Hedeby, he would be able to compensate for the lost revenue that he used to have from the area south of the river Elbe, and was now occupied by the Franken.

However, because Hedeby didn’t bring the expected revenues, Godfred decided to make surprise attacks against the Franken on their own turf, and sent one of their chieftains by the name of Rollo, to raid the Franken’s towns. In their raids the “Normen” used hijacked merchants’ ships to camouflage their intentions. Many people had suffered great losses because they believed that these raiders were peaceful traders. The eyewitnesses’ account tells about one of such raids.

“Once as such ship appeared in a harbour people thought it to be a merchants’ ship but as Charlemagne saw the ship he realized that there were too many men aboard said ship and warned the town folks that they were raiders and called them ‘worthless scamps’. As the raiders saw Charlemagne they knew that they will not succeed this time and left the harbour in a hurry”.

In any event the raiders severely affected the Hainault merchants’ trading activities at a time when they were hard pressed by the Margraves and Counts for the tax and toll payments.

As the situation in England had developed favourably for the Germanic merchants, The Hainault merchants saw the necessity to have a safe trading post on the mainland for their growing trade with England. Though they had a trading post called Paris which was located on the river Seine and fairly far from the North Sea, the wide river attracted the marauding “Normen” who had raided Paris several times.

Therefore the merchants were looking for a new trading post which was connected to the North Sea but sheltered from the Normans’ raids, and I believe that they decided on the area we know today as Brugge (Brugess). Said area was a sea-arm (cul-de-sac) at that time in a densely forested wilderness, and therefore didn’t attract the attention of the marauding Normans, especially as the location on which they had decided, was at the end of the sea-arm, and invisible from the North Sea.

This sea-arm was called Zwin and seemed to be ideal for the purpose. However, even in those days in the Franken Kingdom nobody could just go and start to build a trading post without the permission of the land owner such as a Count, a Margrave or the King himself. Considering these facts, all the stories and suggestions of who built the trading town of Brugge (Brugess) and what the name Brugge meant, are the product of the wild imaginations. A very good example is a story that the “Vikings” built said city because the name Brugge means in the Scandinavian languages a harbour or a mooring place. However, in modern German language “die Brucke” means bridge and considering that Scandinavian languages are Germanic languages, it is very difficult to say what the word meant in those days, or how it was pronounced in various Germanic dialects, especially considering that in every language many words and meanings have changed during the centuries. We also have to take into consideration that in those days “Normen” were marauders and plunderers and not merchants or city builders.

Even the word “Viking” was derived from “i viken” pirates who were doing the bays (veeking). Therefore the most logical explanation, according to my understanding, would be that Brugge was meant to be a bridge for the merchants’ trade activities with England, and therefore it must have been built by the merchants.

The legend tells:

“When in 862 A.D. the counts of Flanders, Baldwin I. kidnapped West Franken Kingdom’s King Charles the Bald’s daughter, Judith, from a convent in Senils (France) and married her the King wasn’t pleased and therefore to punish his unwanted son-in-law Charles the Bald sent Baldwin to one of his wilderness territories which we know today as Flanders. As Baldwin and his bride arrived in the forested area he didn’t see a living thing until suddenly a ferocious bear came out of the woods which Baldwin killed with his spear and on this place he later built Brugge (Bruges).”

Although this is a legend and all legends and myths are based on factual occurrences or events, we therefore have to agree that there did happen something which caused this legend. We also have to accept that the area was uninhabited and a forested wilderness.

By analyzing this legend we have to take into consideration the following:

At the time Baldwin kidnapped Judith the daughter of King Charles the Bald, he couldn’t have been a Count nor could he have belonged to the fighting class (nobility) because he wouldn’t have dared to offend the King by marrying his daughter secretly. Neither would King Charles the Bald have dared to send one of his nobilities to the northern uninhabited wilderness in Flanders because he needed the support of all his nobilities to stay in power and to keep his kingdom together without it falling apart into principalities according to tribal boundaries, especially as he had the restless “Normen” in Normandy whom even his father Charlemagne called worthless scamps. Nor could Baldwin have been from an ordinary family (common family), because in those days most of the common people were afraid of the nobilities, especially the Kings, who had the power over their lives and therefore he wouldn’t have dared to kidnap the King’s daughter knowing that the King could have beheaded him without even blinking an eye, and nobody would have paid any attention. Nor would he have been able to find a priest who would have dared to marry him to the King’s daughter without King’s permission. We have to bear in mind that in those days the marriages were arranged by the parents and therefore in my opinion, the whole incident suggests that the marriage of Baldwin and Judith, the daughter of King Charles the Bald, was thoroughly planned and carefully executed. Judith was a widow and therefore had gone to a convent which would have been well guarded, and it would have been next to impossible for a man to kidnap her from the convent. We also have to remember that in the Franken Kingdom Christianity had established a firm hold on society, and had become a powerful political force for merchants who ruled and supported the Church financially.

Considering all these facts and arguments we have to agree that Baldwin belonged to a very prominent and influential merchant’s family. According to my knowledge, in those days only Hainault (Haino) merchant’s family would have fitted into the said category. Therefore, with the help of their kinsmen the Italian merchant Patricians whose many members were high officials in the Church would have been able to organize the marriage.

I believe that due to constant demands for higher taxes and tolls by the greedy Margraves and Counts, the Hainault Merchants, who, during the Romans’ time had their rightful privilege status recognized, decided to have it also recognized by the Franken Kingdom. It is impossible to tell when they began to plan for the said recognition, could have been even before the time of Charles the Bald. During the centuries, if not millenniums, the Hainault merchants had learned that “haste makes waste”, and therefore they had to wait for the right opportunity to arise.

The opportunity came as the daughter Judith of Charles the Bald became a widow and went to a convent where she was under total influence of the church prelates.

In those days the Popes came from Italian merchant Patricians' families who were also Hainaut (Haino) merchants' kinsmen. Therefore the Hainaut merchants must have requested their Italian merchant kinsmen to ask the Pope to act as a mediator in their negotiations with King Charles the Bald. They must have promised to give to the Church a sizable piece of land as soon as their own man became a Count of the newly established Hainaut County where they had planned to build a trading post.

The King must have been promised a good income from the new trading post, and the Pope must have promised to elevate Charles the Bald to be the Emperor of the Holy Roman Empire, which status he held for about two years, until his death (from 875 A.D. to 877 A.D.). We have to bear in mind that the nobility, kings included, needed constantly more money for their ventures.

According to my understanding, this could have been the only possible way how Baldwin was officially recognized as a Count and could marry Judith, the King's daughter, without offending too much other nobility, for many of them may have wanted to be related to the King for the prestige and possible other benefits of such a relationship.

The only dilemma must have been the nobility who didn't want to accept Baldwin's status as a count, because in their opinion he came from a merchant family and therefore didn't qualify as nobility. And not understanding that Baldwin had, in fact, a millenniums old hereditary ducal rank. They most likely felt that the King could have had his "un-welcomed" son-in-law executed, or had the marriage nullified, for not understanding that at that time both of these actions would have created a schism between the Church and the State, which the King could not afford. However, because Charles the Bald "punished" Baldwin by sending him to the wilderness of Flanders where none of the nobility would have been interested to go, they accepted the King's decision grudgingly, most likely the nobility was given some kind of explanation to satisfy them, which explanations could have been the root for the well-known legend of Brugge (Brugess). Regardless of all possible explanations many nobility carried grudges against the Hainaut (Haino) nobility for several generations, possibly because of jealousy for their well-known wealth and power.

All this must have been carefully and thoroughly calculated by the Hainaut merchant Patricians because as soon as Baldwin arrived in Flanders where the sea-arm called Zwin was located, of which the legend tells that it was a total wilderness, he gave the whole Zwin area officially to his merchant Patrician family, who started to build the trading post they called Brugge (Brugess). Historical account proves that the leading merchants of Brugge (Brugess) were Hainaut Patricians, which in my opinion, indicates that Charles the Bald had fulfilled his part of the bargain and recognized the Hainaut (Haino) merchants' ducal status. This was later confirmed by "De Institutis Londonie of Ethelred (978 A.D. – 1016 A.D.) as they refer to the Hainaut merchants as "Homines Imperatoris qui veniebant in navibus suis".

All other merchants were mentioned by the name of the town they came from.

After Baldwin I, also known as "The Iron Arm", had surrendered a large area of the Hainaut County to his Hainaut family Patricians, he also made large grants of land to The Church, for churches and abbeys, most likely for the services The Church had rendered during his marriage arrangements.

A few years later Pope John VIII (872 A.D. - 883 A.D.) crowned King Charles the Bald as the Emperor of the Holy Roman Empire.

Thus the whole transaction was completed according to the plan for the satisfaction of all parties concerned.

The Hainaut Patricians started immediately to build the trading town Brugge (Brugess) and organize their growing trade with England, because the trade was for them first and for most in importance, in fact, their entire life was trade.

They weren't attached to any particular place or any country, all their actions were based on what was good for their trading activities, even their marriages were carefully planned and calculated. Therefore their ducal status was also used to further their trade, and to benefit all merchants, and not oppress people nor burden them with heavy taxes.

The ducal Patrician status which the Hainault merchants had for centuries, if not millenniums, even before the Romans' time, and which was now also recognized by the Emperor Charles the Bald, was a hereditary ducal rank which was inherited by all male descendants equally. This was contrary to the so-called firstborn's birthright which came in effect among most of the nobility as the Christianity gained hold in Europe and which followed the biblical firstborn system. This biblical system was not observed by the Patrician because of their family's millenniums old tradition.

Same was also with their trading activities which weren't ruled by one ruler, but "democratically by an assembly of their family's Patriarchs, and therefore there weren't any feuds, frictions or any trade wars between the merchants. They all worked for the same common good and for the advancement of their trade. Whereas the nobility, who followed the so called firstborn's birthright, were constantly fighting for supremacy because there wasn't any guarantee that the first-born was the most suitable to rule.

Throughout our written history we may read how a younger brother had deposed his older brother from power by force, or son had tried to depose his father to become the ruler of their country. This never happened among the merchants who were strictly against any kind of violence because they knew that wars and hostilities brought devastation and misery for the people and disrupted trading activities.

Therefore there weren't any "glorious conquests" of which the fighting classes were strutting. These so-called "glorious conquests" were prompted by personal greed, to rob people and tax them afterwards with high payments and forced contributions. Yet in history books you may have read accusations of merchants' greediness regardless that they always paid fair price for everything, and never took anything without giving something in return.

We also have to remember that in those days all craftsmen and artisans kept their craft activities secret, because of the fear of the robbers, the merchants kept also their trading routes and all activities, secret. In fact, they kept all their activities within their families to prevent possible betrayals by their workers and therefore they didn't keep any books or records, even the marriages were arranged between the merchants' families to protect their trading activities, and to keep them within the merchants' circles that they could trust.

As the trade with England started to expand due to the new trading post in Brugge, the Hainault Patricians who were the owners and rulers of Brugge realized that to avoid unnecessary frictions among the merchants, they needed to establish merchants' guilds. Therefore they organized all merchants into three hereditary categories, namely into retailers, wholesalers and importer-exporters. The rights and privileges of all merchants' activities, even concerning their personal lives, were thoroughly regulated and strictly enforced.

The retailers, who sold their wares in their stores and the traveling salesmen who had their wares in their backpacks as they traveled to far away hamlets, bought their wares from the wholesalers.

The wholesalers who bought their wares from the importer-exporters had also the right to participate in Fairs which were organized by the importer-exporters, and were classified as merchants of the 2nd Guild. To illustrate how detailed the rights and privileges were stipulated in those days, I want to mention that for example, a merchant of the 2nd Guild had the right to travel in a carriage drawn by three horses which gave him certain prestige. To a contemporary person this may sound silly, but in those days it was a very important privilege, because it demonstrated a person's social status.

The importer-exporters, who were also ship owners were classified as merchants of the First-Guild. The merchants of the First Guild were the descendants of the original “international” merchants who had traded for millenniums with each other and with the merchants of the various countries. These merchants were a very close knit society who knew each other in person, and therefore were trusted. We have to remember that in the early days of trading activities all transactions were sealed with a handshake, and that it was their ancestors who had laid the foundations for commercial activities throughout Asia, Middle-East, Africa and Europe. As the inheritors of their ancestors work they were considered to be a class of their own. We also have to remember that people lived in a class society and observed strictly the rules of their own class.

The administration was organized on the same principle as the then prevailing autocratic system, whereby the rulers had absolute power over all citizens in their domain. Therefore, regardless that the Hainault family had been ruled by an assembly of Patriarchs and continued to rule Brugge according to their family tradition, this assembly had an absolute power in the City of Brugge. Because they had hereditary ducal rank and were able to deal with Dukes, Kings and even the Emperor himself on equal basis, they were recognized by other merchants of the First Guild as the rulers of the trade.

We also have to consider that in those days, the rulers considered all merchants as commoners who weren't worthy to sit at the same negotiation table with them, unless they were sent by the Patricians as their personal ambassadors.

The situation of Brugge was completely different from all other cities of the time. It was an independent entity or a principality, if you will, owned by the Hainault Patricians who regardless that they had a ducal rank, didn't rule any duchy, but created Merchants' Guild and that way “sowed the seed” for the future mercantile and maritime empire, later known as “Die Hanse” or Hansa.

At the time these events took place in the Western-Europe the trade in Eastern and Northern - Europe started to decline due to the heathen Slavs' invasion and the so called “Viking Era”.

CHAPTER X

In the early years of our Christian era the Romans were fully aware of Baltic amber, because as early as in 14 A.D. they had acquired amber through Germanic merchants as mentioned in an earlier chapter. This clearly indicates that the Germanic merchants had been in contact with the Finnic Liivs (Lithuanian) and Latts (Latvian) merchants for centuries before the Roman times. At that time nothing happened overnight “instantly” the way many things happen today due to the modern transportation and communication technology.

In those days amber was obtainable only from the south-eastern parts of the Baltic Sea and the marshes around it, therefore it is very good indicator of trading activities.

Some of the amber was washed ashore by the sea and some of it was acquired from the south-eastern marshes as people rode on horseback back-and-forth and broke pieces of amber which floated to the surface where people could gather them.

Here we have to look back to the time when the Germanic merchants began the trade in the Baltic area. We already mentioned the amber trade and the trading post of Rerik. We also have to understand that in those days the merchants didn't stand behind their counters waiting for customers nor sat in their offices, but had to go out to look for trading opportunities. In fact, the merchants' profession was a very dangerous, and therefore they had to be robust, strong and fearless.

Only courageous men dared to venture on a trading trip into unknown areas where people hated all strangers and killed intruders without hesitation, because in those lawless and dangerous times people had experienced all kinds of atrocities from strangers and raiders. In most cases the strangers came to kill, plunder, burning their homes, taking their young people and children into slavery who were in high demand in Rome and in the Middle East.

It must have taken a great deal of patience to make people to understand that the merchants came in peace, and not to rob, especially, if they couldn't speak the language of the people whom they visited. After they had established good relations with the local merchants they had to make sure that when they came again that people would recognize them, and therefore started to use red and white striped sails on their boats so that people would recognize them from far away that they were merchants, and not raiders.

In the beginning their ships were small with square sail, but as the trade grew they needed bigger ships with several oarsmen. Their ships were of shallow draft and didn't have a keel because they weren't built to plough through the waves, but to "ride the waves", and they still had to use the square sails. They also had to stay close to the shores especially in the Baltic Sea which was and still is very treacherous and unpredictable. Therefore, in those days they couldn't cross the Baltic Sea from its eastern shores to Gotland which lies only about 50 nautical miles from the eastern shores of Sweden. For a long time it had been considered a mystery when the first contacts were made with the Finnic people in the Baltic countries and the area we know today as Finland and Russia. Therefore it has been possible for many "historians" to come up with the wildest stories and "historical facts".

However, in today's archaeological finds, the carbon testing and DNA "finger printings" many mythological stories, sagas and legends are slowly starting to reveal the true picture of times, long gone and forgotten. The fabrications of the "historians" have been exposed for what they are, pure fabrications and distortions of history.

Before the Huns' invasion in the 4th century the whole Central and Western Europe, from the Carpathian Mountains to the British Isles was populated by various Germanic tribes and Celts. The Germanic merchants who made the first contacts with the Finnic merchants in the Baltic Sea area must have been from various Germanic tribes and nations. Especially as the southern parts of Scandinavia was populated by Germanic tribes such as the Goths, the Saxons, the Angles and the Jutes who all had a direct access to the Baltic Sea, and because the southern shores of Sweden are visible from the Danish islands, it is only logical to assume that they must have migrated already in the early Stone Age.

The central and the northern parts of Scandinavia, Finland, the Baltic countries and the area we know today as the northern part of ex-Soviet Union, were populated by Finno Ugrian tribes.

The most populous of the Germanic tribes in the Baltic Sea area were the Goths and the Saxons, so it is safe to say that most of the Germanic merchants in the area were from these two tribes, especially considering that the island of Gotland got its name most likely from the Goths, the same way as the Jutland got its name from Jutes. And that in Schonen the city of Goteborg (Goeteborg) was originally called Gothenburg because it was built by the Goths for their protection against the constant attacks of the pesky Jutes (Danes).

In the Baltic area the Goths were well-known as seafaring people and their merchants were very well known in the area, but so were also the merchants of Saxons, Angles and Jutes, All these tribes had good centuries old trading relations with the Friesians, the Franken and the Hainault merchants, and because they all spoke about the same language, though with different dialects, they were able to communicate with each other.

Therefore, especially through the Hainault merchants, who had been trading with their Italian kinsmen, the merchants Patricians of Rome, Venice, Pisa and Florence for centuries, even before the Roman Empire was established, were able to acquire goods and wares which were otherwise unobtainable to the northern people in the Baltic Sea area.

The Baltic merchants wouldn't have been able to acquire said goods, considering the great distance from the Baltic Sea to Italy and the lawlessness of the times. They would have been killed and robbed before reaching their destination. Therefore they needed the Germanic merchants who knew the safest routes and languages of the southern people. It was also the same for Germanic merchants who didn't know the safe routes in the vast area of the whole northern and eastern Europe.

All this created very strong bond between the merchants and they became a craft of their own. Later these bonds became even stronger as the fighting classes (nobility), some of whom were robber counts and robber barons, constantly harassed the merchants in their greediness and forced the peaceful merchants to pay high taxes and contributions for the rights to pass through their lands and trade with their subjects. Anyone who tried to pass through their lands without the land owners' permission, if caught, was murdered and all his wares were confiscated by the land owner as was mentioned earlier. Many "historians" have tried to convince us that the Germanic people were mindless "barbarians" who in their ignorance destroyed everything that was civilized, completely disregarding the Bastarnais' civilization, not to speak of the civilizations which flourished about 3000 B.C.E. (Before Christian Era) in the area we know today as the Ukraine. Those people had high civilizations about 1000 years before Abraham's time. They couldn't have been Slavic people because the Slavs invaded said area after the Huns had destroyed the Bastarnais, as noted earlier. Therefore I strongly believe that they must have been the ancestors of the Germanic people especially as the Bastarnais were related to the Goths. Said people had a civilization based on maternal system, as the archaeological finds proved in ex-Soviet Union and lived in peace with their neighbours. It seems to me that they must have had strong merchant colonies, because throughout the human history it was the merchants who promoted peaceful co-existence between people and not the fighting classes (nobility) who in their greediness created chaos and misery for the people.

To have some kind of understanding of how people behaved and fought their wars in ancient times, and how people, the conquerors, fought over the spoils of war, we only have to read the Bible, and then a question arises; "Weren't they "barbarians"?"

Considering that the Goths lived west of the Carpathian Mountains, it is only logical to assume that they must have been closely related to the highly civilized Bastarnais because they were of the same Indo-Germanic stock, even the archaeological evidence concerning them suggests their close interrelation. According to my understanding the Goths occupied the area we know today as Poland, Czech Republic and Slovakia, which is between the Carpathian Mountains in the east and river Oder and Neisse in the west, and from the River Danube in the south, to the Baltic Sea in the north.

Due to the turbulent times which followed the Huns' invasion, and after that as the Slavs started to conquer and occupy the Germanic lands, most of the evidence of Goths' civilization was destroyed with the exception of the "Gothic architecture", the Gothic script and a few archaeological evidences mainly in Gotland, which give us some kind of understanding of the kingdom of Goths and their advanced civilization.

The Gothic architecture with its steep roofs was adopted by the central and northern Europeans even in Scandinavia, Finland and the Baltic countries, because it was especially designed for the northern climate with heavy snow falls. Flat roofs would have caved in during the spring as the snow melts and becomes heavy.

The Gothic alphabet with such letters as “u umlaut”, “a umlaut”, “o umlaut” and “y umlaut” were designed to facilitate all Germanic language speaking people to replace the Runic characters which had been used for millenniums and had become outdated. Later they were also used by the Finnic people in Finland, and the people in the Baltic countries.

According to my understanding these two factors clearly indicate, after all, that the Germanic people weren't such ignorant “barbarians” as some “historians” would want us to believe.

The archaeological finds in Gotland are in my opinion the strongest evidence of Goths' civilization and culture, because Gotland had survived almost undisturbed by the great turbulences which had affected all European nations.

It is impossible to tell; who were the first inhabitants of Gotland but there is evidence that it was inhabited during the Stone Age from about 10.000 B.C.E. – 3000 B.C.E. (Before Christian Era). There is also evidence of a flourishing sea merchant economy in the Bronze Age from 1500 B.C.E. – 500 B.C.E. (Before Christian Era). From these times there are so-called “skeppsattningar” or ship-graves, and the “Guta Saga” or Guta Legend from the 13th century. They tell about the ancient times, among them a story of unique lottery which took place sometime between the 1st and 5th century A.D. whereby, due to over-population, every third man with his family had to leave the island because the land could no longer feed all the people. Therefore some of them had to leave. It was decided that not to discriminate against anyone, a lottery should decide who had to leave the island.

As I have pointed out before, every legend or saga is based on actual event. How much of this legend is true is hard to tell, but I believe that we have to agree that over-population really took place sometime between the 1st and 5th century because it co-incides with the Huns' invasion.

According to my understanding the Germanic merchants had been very active in the Baltic area long before our Christian Era, the cases of the amber trade and the trading post of Rerik proved. Therefore I also believe that the Germanic people, the Goths, the Saxons, the Angles and the Jutes and possibly also the Friesians had partly populated the southern part of Sweden which we know today as Schone (Scania) and the island of Gotland.

We have to remember that in those days, considering the marauders and pirates, an island was the safest place for trading activities because the surrounding waters acted as a moat and possible intruders could have been detected from far away.

It has also been said that “the merchants of Gotland traded from the Baltic Sea to the Mediterranean Sea, Arabia and Asia Minor, claiming that they traveled through Kattegat and Skagerak, through the North Sea to Gibraltar, and from there to the Mediterranean Sea. And because of the clashes between the Muslims and the Christians blocked the Mediterranean trade route the “Vikings” switched to the northern European passages.”

This in my opinion doesn't sound to me very convincing, or realistic:

1. In the first place, there weren't any such people as “Viking merchants”.
2. Secondly, on the long voyage from the Baltic Sea to the Mediterranean Sea there weren't any ports-of-call, and the merchants wouldn't have been able to load their small ships with enough provisions together with their goods and wares to sustain such a long trip.
3. Thirdly, I believe that the merchants of Gotland were Germanic merchants who lived in Gotland. And who had their close relatives and partners such as the Goths, the Saxons, the Angles etc., on the mainland and therefore were able to use the European waterways, or worked together in co-operation with the other Germanic merchants and therefore had foreign coins which were found in Gotland by archaeologists. The logical explanation, in my opinion, is that the Germanic merchants had used the European waterways long before our Christian Era to reach the Middle-Eastern countries.

By looking at the European map you can see that to reach the Black Sea you can use either the Oder-Neisse rivers, or the river Wistula to reach the river Danube which flows into the Black Sea, or you can use the river Neumunas in Lithuania, cross the Pink Marshes to get to the river Dniepr which also flows into the Black Sea. All these waterways were fully familiar to the Germanic merchants of various tribes, especially the Goths. In fact, I believe, that the Goths' kingdom was the predecessor of Germany, because the Romans called the area north of the river Rhine as Germania.

The Huns' invasion changed everything in the central and northern Europe including Scandinavia. The whole trade had to be rerouted through the Western Europe which trade has been analyzed earlier. In the Northern Europe the Saxons were pushed westward and the Angles were forced to migrate to the British Isles. Because there were too many Goths on the move they were forced to migrate to Schone in Sweden where I believe they forced the few Saxons, Angles, Friesians and possibly few Celts to move to the central Sweden where they assimilated with the Finnic people who had migrated to the area earlier, these Germanic groups retained their Germanic language and became known during the centuries as Svea people. As the Goths populated most of the Schone area, and some of them moved to Gotland which was mostly populated by Goths, they created there an overpopulation which caused the infamous lottery as was mentioned earlier.

The Jutes who lived in Schone invited their fellow Jutes from Jutland and the surrounding islands to counter the Goths invasion, therefore there were constant skirmishes for several centuries between them. All these turbulences created great hardships for the merchants which were increased by the fact that as the Huns' onslaught stopped in 375 A.D. the heathen Slavs started to occupy the mostly devastated and partly deserted areas, previously well cultivated by the Germanic tribes. Only a few Germanic people remained, and they were powerless against the Slavs who were more numerous. The few Germanic people who remained on the ravaged lands slowly assimilated with the Slavs and lost their Germanic identity. Most likely similar assimilation had also happened among the Bastarnai people who had lived according to the records by ancient authors in the lower reaches of the river Danube, east of the Carpathian Mountains and around the rivers Dniepr and Bug, which area we know today as the western Ukraine. The name Ukraine must have been derived from the Slavic word "u krajina", meaning at the frontier. This in my opinion clearly indicates that by the Slavs from the Balkan, the area was considered as a frontier, not populated, and therefore proves that the rest of "Russia" was still unknown to them.

To confirm that the Slavic language wasn't spoken by the rest of the inhabitants of "Russia" including the Baltic countries, I want to mention that as late as in 1863 A.D. the Russian Czar Alexander III (1881 A.D. – 1894 A.D.) Was informed that less than 50% of Russian population spoke Slavic Russian. For national security reason the Czar Alexander III started to "russianise" the Russia's population by forced relocations, to protect Russia's western borders against the Germans who had started to gain political power due to Otto von Bismarck's custom duties unification association (Zollverein). Especially people who lived close to the Russia's western border and didn't speak Slavic language were relocated to central Russia, and the Slavic language speaking people were forced to replace them. These forced relocations were dubbed by the people as "pogrom". According to history books the most brutal pogroms were carried out against the Lithuanians because they refused to move out from their ancestral land and give it to the strangers.

The other part of the Slavs, who pushed their way northward on the western side of the Carpathian Mountains and remained on the central European plains were called "poliani", or people who live on the fields, and those who continued all the way to the Baltic Sea were called "pomerani", or people who live by the sea, later this area was called by the Germans as Pommern.

CHAPTER XI

I believe that the Huns' invasion stopped in central Europe in 375 A.D. because they had heard that the real riches were in Rome. Therefore they turned south to plunder the City of Rome but there they got a "bloody nose", and their fury was extinguished. And because they were of the original Indo-European stock they assimilated easily with the other Europeans and disappeared from history as an entity. The area we know today as south-central "Russia" and Eastern Europe was almost completely devastated and deserted as most of the Indo-Germanic people had left it to escape the Huns brutalities. Therefore as the Slavs invaded the area between the Carpathian Mountains and the Oder-Neisse line they didn't have much resistance, and within a few centuries they were able to occupy the area all the way to the Baltic Sea. In 819 A.D. they came to the area we know today as Lubeck where their warlord fell in love with the beauty of the island between the rivers Wakenitz and Trave, and called it Liubshe or Liubishe, which meant in their language "lovely or loveable", and built a summer villa "dacha" on it. Slowly the area grew into a small Slavic hamlet.

All this had an adverse affect on the Germanic merchants trading activities. They were forced to reroute their trading routes of their whole Baltic trade, because Godfred the King of Danes (Jutes) had sacked the trading post of Rerik about 11 years earlier (808 A.D.), and forced the Germanic merchants to move to Hedeby. And also considering that the distance between "Liubshe" and Hedeby which is about 100 kilometres, there wasn't much of the Baltic Sea shoreline left for the Germanic merchants without being harassed by the Slavs, the Danes and the "i viken" pirates. The Germanic merchants realized that it would not take long before the heathen Slavs would occupy even that "short piece" of the Baltic Sea shore, and therefore they were forced to consider safer way for their trade with the Baltic Sea nations. The hardships of all these events were enormous, as the central and northern European trade was reduced to a trickle of its previous volume.

In the meantime the Hainault (Haino) merchant Princes, by using their prestigious ducal status, which by now was recognized also by the other Germanic merchants and also by some of the nobility, decided to revive the Baltic trade. Therefore I believe that they assembled the Germanic merchants in Brugge (Bruges), to decide on the best route for the Baltic Sea trade, because the Friesians who had been trading with the north-western Scandinavia for centuries must have suggested that a fjord in Norway was the best and safest location for a trading post. It was sheltered by mountains with good access to the interior of the entire Scandinavia. The site being unanimously approved by the merchants was dubbed "Bergen" (Mountains), and the whole trading route was called "Nord Weg" (North Way). This route enabled the Germanic merchants to avoid the constant harassments from the Slavs, the Danes (Jutes) and especially the "i viken" pirates who were lurking in the bays of the straits of Kattegat and Skagerrak, and to continue their trade in a relatively peaceful environment with the people of the Baltic Sea, Olhava (Novgorod) and even as far as Moscow.

We have to remember that in those days the fighting classes and the nobility, considered the merchants as commoners because they worked for their living and were therefore looked down upon as lesser people who weren't worthy to sit at the same negotiation table with them. However, because the Hainault (Haino) merchant Patricians had a ducal rank they were able to negotiate with the rulers even on the highest level, and were respected by the Kings, the Princes, and even by the Emperor as equals. This led to the fact that all other merchants considered them as their leaders whose leadership was needed for a successful trade.

We shouldn't forget that people lived in those days in a class society.

To reroute their Baltic Sea trade through Bergen the merchants had to establish a trading post, and a depot in central Sweden, because Visby which was on the island of Gotland was too far south, and therefore was impractical, especially considering that the Goths, who had colonized the whole southern Sweden, were constantly attacked by the Danes (Jutes).

It was mentioned earlier that in those days the safest place for a trading post and depot was an island, because the surrounding waters acted as a moat against the intruders and the marauders as people could see the approaching vessels from far away, and they could prepare themselves to give the visitors the kind of welcome they deserved.

Therefore in 829 A.D. the Germanic merchants together with the local Swedish merchants decided to establish a trading post and a depot on the island of Bjorkoe (Bjorko) in the Lake of Maelaren (Malaren), which is situated west of Stockholm, and has access to the Baltic Sea by a wide river. The name Bjorko means in Swedish language "birch island", and in German language the word "birch" is "Die Birke", the Germanic merchants named the trading post "Birka". They could have established their trading post on the island of Stockholm (Log Island) which they owned at that time. But because it was used to assemble logs into rafts for the transportation of the logs to the southern ship builders, it was frequently visited by all kind of people and therefore wasn't safe enough to be a trading post, or a depot. They also had to start to reorganize their trade routes from the Baltic countries and from Olhava (Novgorod).

Before the Huns' invitation the Baltic countries especially the Liivs (Lithuanians) must have had a flourishing trade with the Bastamais and the Goths which was interrupted by the Huns. However, after the Huns' invasion stopped, they must have renewed their traditional trading activities with their southern and eastern neighbours, because the river Neumunas flows through the whole Lithuania and has its sources in the same general area as the river Dniepr which flows into the Black Sea, and was the main trading route for their commercial activities. The Liivs trading activities with the western Germanic merchants were interrupted until about 13th century due to the Slav's invasion west of the Carpathian Mountains, as they had lost access to the Baltic Sea. In fact, the Slavs had occupied the whole area which was previously owned by the Goths and Liivs up to the Kursiu Lagoon (Kurischers Haff) and the town of Klaipeda in Lithuania. But when the Germanic Knights gained control over a large area of Poland and Lithuania, said Kursiu Lagoon and Klaipeda included, the Germanic merchants were able to assist the Liivs' (Lithuanians') merchants to revive their centuries old tradition, the Baltic trade which extended from today's Ukraine to the Baltic Sea and central Europe.

The case with the Latts (Latvia and Viro (Estonia) was completely different as they weren't invaded by the Huns nor the heathen Slavs.

The Latts (Latvians) had an ancient trading town on the Baltic Sea called Riga, at the delta of the river Daugava (in Russian "Western Dvina"). The sources of this river are also in the same general area as the river Dniepr and also of the river Volga and river Oka where the Finnic tribes Vatja and Merja lived. The Vatja people were well-known merchants even as late as the Russian Revolution, they used to sell frozen "pirogies" in winter in St. Petersburg's market, in fact, they were the first ever to sell frozen foods. Today there are only a few Vatjas alive because in Stalin purges they were almost completely liquidated for their nationalism.

The Merja tribe disappeared early in history for reasons unknown to us.

Could they have been the same people whom the Queen Olga annihilated for the murder of her son Igor, or did they adopt the Slavic language and therefore their own language was completely forgotten? The Latts (Latvians) who, in addition to their own products, had good trading relations with the Vatja and Merja tribes and acted as middlemen for them in the Baltic trade.

The other Baltic nation was Viro (today called Estonia) who in addition to their own products acted as middlemen for the Vepsa (Veps) and Inkeröis (Ishor) tribes utilizing Lake Peipus (Chudskoye ozero) and the rivers Emajogi and Narva.

By rerouting their Baltic Sea Trade the Germanic merchants together with their counterparts of different nations had to also organize safe anchorages for their ships. Keeping in mind that only the local people in their own area knew the safest routes and anchorage places, and the fact that the Liivs (Lithuanians) had lost their access to the Baltic Sea to the heathen Slavs, the merchants had to direct the Latts (Latvians) merchants ships to Parnu in Viro (Estonia) instead of sending them south to Klaipeda in Lithuania, which would have been the shortest route to reach the central European markets.

From Parnu they sailed together with the Viro (Estonian) merchants to Ravel (Tallinn, Estonia), where they joined the merchants' ships from Narva and Olhava (Novgorod).

As mentioned earlier, the trading post of Olhava (Novgorod) is situated on the shores of Lake Ilmajarvi (Lake Il'men) from where the Finnic merchants sailed along the river Olhava (Volkhov) to Lake Ladoga where they were joined by other Finnic merchant ships which came from the trading post of Korela. Together the Finnic merchants sailed along the river Neva to the Gulf of Finland. At that time the city of St. Petersburg wasn't yet built. It was built by Peter the Great in the early 18th century.

As the merchants' ships from Olhava and Korela arrived in the Gulf of Finland, they sailed along the southern shores to the river Narva where they were joined by merchants which came along the river Narva from Lake Peipus. Together they sailed to Ravel (Tallinn) where they joined the convoy which came from Pamu and Riga.

From Ravel (Tallinn) the flotilla of merchants' ships crossed the Gulf of Finland to Purkal (Porkkala). This is the shortest crossing point between Viro (Estonia) and Suomi (Finland) because on the south side of the Gulf of Finland there is an island which at that time was called Narigeth.

Today its name in the Estonian language is "Naisesaar" and in the Finnish language it is called "Naissaari". On the Finnish side there are several islands so that the open sea is only about 35 kilometres wide and the islands are seen on a bright day from both sides. Therefore, being the narrowest crossing point, it was also the safest point for the merchants to cross the Gulf of Finland. In Purkal (Porkkala) they met the other merchants' ships which had sailed along the north side of the Gulf of Finland from Viborg, Hamina, Kotka and Porvoo.

Considering that most of these merchants were of Finnic origin who spoke about the same language and how time consuming the sailing was, I believe that the name Purkal came from Finnic word "purkala" meaning "place of unloading". We also have to remember, that the local merchants were afraid to venture too far into the open seas in their small ships, no bigger than boats, and therefore leads to the assumption that the local merchants unloaded their ships in Purkal, and reloaded them with the western wares which were brought by the Germanic merchants from Birka. After reloading, the local merchants returned home.

The Germanic merchants who came from Birka returned passing several anchorage places to Lambote on the island of Aland ("Ahvenanmaa"), close to the present city of Marienhamn ("Maarianhamina").

There they were joined by the merchants' ships from Turku (Abo), Ulvila and Vaasa.

Then the flotilla crossed the Gulf of Botnia at the point which is about 60 kilometres wide, sailed past the island of Stockholm along the river to the island of Birka in the lake of Malaren. We also have to remember that at that time Finland was an integral part of Sweden and was called Eastland because it was situated east of the Gulf of Botnia.

In Birka the goods and wares were transferred to smaller ships and boats which took them through lakes and rivers to Norway where they were transported to Bergen. Though this route was longer and more time consuming it was much safer than sailing through the straits of Kattegat and Skagerak which were infested by "i viken" pirates. The people along this longer route benefited from the trade which improved their standard of living and therefore were ready to defend the merchants against the robbers and marauders.

In those days the pirates and robbers were the constant danger and caused the biggest problems, therefore the merchants' ships had to sail in convoys to protect themselves.

Considering also that the Germanic merchants never robbed or murdered anyone nor were they involved in slave trade, people loved and trusted them and therefore were ready to protect them.

In their trading posts the Germanic merchants had their kindred as their representatives. They brought with them many Germanic craftsmen and artisans who built for them their homes and that way created Germanic quarters in their trading posts. These craftsmen were people who were Christianized and because the local people liked the way the newcomers lived and prospered, they started to imitate them and accept Christianity. In those days wherever the Germanic merchants had established their colonies, they always built a church, and promoted Christianity also because of its pacifying effect on the heathen people. The church also favoured the merchants because most of the Church leaders were at that time members of various merchants' families.

I believe that, for example, the dispute between Charlemagne and Godfred King of Danes (Jutes) started when Bremen was made a Bishopric in 787 A.D. and Godfred who wasn't Christianized demanded higher taxes from Bremen. The Church and the merchants who were the principal tax payers appealed to Charlemagne, who was the Emperor of the Holy Roman Empire, to get rid of the pesky Danes.

Charlemagne therefore annexed the whole area between the rivers Rhine and Elbe, which caused the "Normen" raids.

As then Harold Gormanson (Bluetooth) King of Danes accepted Christianity in 960 A.D. the relations between the Franken and the Danes improved.

Bremen was granted the market rights by the Emperor Otto I and Archbishop Adaldag confirmed them in 965 A.D. I believe that Bremen was given these rights because it was main Bishopric also for the whole of Scandinavia until the Bishopric was established in Vesteras for Scandinavia.

As Christianity spread among the heathen Scandinavians the merchants' trading activities became easier. Generally Christianity was accepted as a choice of life except in Norway where King Olav forced people to accept it by sword and fire.

In Vesteras was a very strong Germanic colony close to the trading post of Birka in central Sweden. It was located on the mainland of Sweden about 50 -60 kilometres from the well-known heathen city of Upsala. In those days the Svea people were still hanging on stubbornly to their heathen beliefs. They had a magnificent heathen temple in Upsala with many statues of gods, with high halls glittering with gold, and had a lavish sanctuary or grove where sacrificed human bodies, and animal carcasses hung on the trees, therefore Vesteras became a Bishopric to promote Christianity more efficiently to the heathen Svea people. Vesteras was for a while the Capital City of Sweden until Stockholm replaced it.

As the Germanic merchants were forced to change their trading routes from the southern shores of the Baltic Sea to the northern route, the Nord Weg "north way", which included Birka in central Sweden and Bergen in Norway, the central Sweden started to prosper, but the island of Gotland and especially city of Visby and the southern Sweden, the so called Schone or Scania, started to decline.

There were also other factors which caused great anxiety not only in the Baltic Sea area, but also in the Fenno-Scandia which affected the northern and western Europe and also the area we call today "Russia".

For about 250 -300 years, from 800 A.D. to about 1100 A.D. the northern marauders whom some of the "historians" fancy to call "Vikings" were searching for land and riches, and creating havoc wherever they went. Many modern time writers are telling all kinds of mind boggling stories about the "brave Vikings" who in those times were unknown as "Vikings", and then have the nerve to claim that they were peaceful traders. In my opinion these stories are an insult to the Germanic, Danish, Swedish, Baltic and Finnic merchants, many of whom suffered great hardships, even loss of lives because of robbers and "i viken" pirates. Said writers are in fact insulting our mentality by suggesting that murdering and plundering is a prescription for peaceful trade. Or are they trying to tell that Spanish conquistadores were peaceful traders?

I feel that only peace and good relations were and are the basic factors for good commercial relations and prosperity.

In 1066 A.D. the Slavic Wends sacked Hedeby from which it never recovered, and even the short Baltic Sea shoreline which was before available to the Germanic and Danish merchants, was lost to the heathen Slavs, therefore the so called "Nord Weg" or North Way, was the only possibility to continue the Baltic trade.

This in my opinion clearly demonstrate that it wasn't the "bad Germanic merchants" who undermined the lucrative trade of the city of Visby and the whole southern Sweden, but the heathen Slavs who forced the Germanic merchants to change their trading routes which had the devastating effect on Gotland and the Southern Sweden.

The Hainault merchant Patricians had expected it to happen and therefore it clearly proves their farsightedness in their trading activities.

In 1070 Bergen received its city status and became later one of the main trading posts of "Die Hanse".

CHAPTER XII

In the previous chapter I mentioned the mind boggling stories by the northern storytellers about the so called "Vikings"

The story which is published by the Lulea University in Sweden, in my opinion, clearly characterizes the "historical" value of the Viking Sagas".

In their elaborate description, which I cannot quote word for word but it can be read on the internet under "The Viking Age Sweden"; they tell about three different groups of marauders as being one cohesive group which they called "Vikings" who were raiders, plunders, murderers, farmers, city builders, traders and what not. They completely disregard the fact that they came from different tribes, and in those days even the word "Viking" as a person, wasn't used by any one. As I mentioned earlier, the "Viking" stories sound to me more or less as "another trolla story", or would the Irish leprechauns characterize them better? The Finns and the Saamis have also their own stories of "maahiset" and "trullis" and the Russians have their "Karliki", and all of "these guys" are also pesky characters, except that they don't murder.

A very good example is the story of the pirate Rollo who, "even by the Vikings standards, was an outlaw". In the same story they also tell how Rollo "had been robbing, slaughtering and plundering all over the French coast and as he got tired he went to Paris and besieged it". After he had thoroughly plundered around Paris, the French King, whom the Swedes called "Karl den enfaldige (Karl the stupid)", meaning Charlemagne, who gave to the "Normen" the area we know today as Normandy.

They also tell that "as Rollo married the King's daughter he was meant to kiss the King's foot to show that he accepts the King as his superior, but because Rollo, according to his boastings, didn't have any superior, refused and sent one of his men to do it for him. The man stepped forward, took the foot, kissed it and lifted the King and threw him out of the window".

After all these heroic and brave stories they tell, "To be able to get married he had to be baptized". How was it possible that this brave man was forced to be baptized?

Doesn't this clearly indicate that all this bravery was the usual boasting which in those days was the customary way to belittle all opponents to prove to his own men how brave he was, and to show them that there wasn't any reason to fear the enemy.

As they tell about the bravery of "Vikings" they seem to ignore completely the fact that many of them had to work up their courage to fight like madmen; therefore the boasting of their own bravery and the derogatory statements about their opponents were so important for them.

I feel that my explanations of the events which took place between Godfred and Charlemagne as mentioned in Chapter IX make more sense than the Swedish version of "Rollo's heroic adventures". However, I don't believe that the dispute between Charlemagne and Godfred was the only reason for the "Normens" raids. We also have to take into consideration the facts that due to the Huns' and Slavs' invasions into the traditionally Germanic land; the Germanic merchants were forced to reorganize their trade routes several times which affected the standard of living especially among the Goths and Jutes (Danes).

Adding to the loss of income and the increase in population during the "good times", the young people became restless, especially, as with the then "slash and burn" agriculture, the land couldn't sustain the growing population. Therefore, especially the Danes, welcomed the dispute between Charlemagne and Godfred, and started their raids in search of better income and agricultural land.

By looking at the topography of Norway you can see that Norway doesn't have much agricultural land. Originally it was populated in the north by nomadic reindeer herders, the Saami people, or Laplanders as they are also known, and the central and southern parts by Finnic hunters, fishers and gatherers. Then, after the Huns' and Slavs' invasions, some of the Goths moved through Schone to the southern parts of Norway, assimilated with the Finnic people, and slowly multiplied. However, the land couldn't sustain them anymore.

As the Germanic merchants rerouted their Baltic trade through Bergen the local people realized that there were other people elsewhere who lived and prospered, especially the young people started to explore the possibilities for a better life. However, considering that the population of Norway was much smaller than in Denmark, and that the trading post in Bergen created many jobs for the local people especially for the fishermen due to the high demand of salted fish in the south, fewer young men were ready to join the adventurous expeditions.

As mentioned before that the Danes, who were called "Normen", started their "guerrilla" attacks against the Franken to compensate the lost revenue which was caused by Charlemagne as he annexed the lucrative area between Rhine and Elbe. But as Charlemagne gave the "Normen" the area we know today as Normandy they ceased their attacks.

However, because this area didn't give the Danes any income, they attacked and conquered their previous neighbours, the Angles, who had moved to the British Isles and established there the Kingdom of Anglia.

Wherever the Danes went they always knew that there were people therefore their intention was to conquer and to force people to pay high taxes. The Norwegians known as Norsemen, whose name came from the Norwegian word "Norske" meaning "northerner", didn't know when they left their shores on their fishing trips whether they would meet anyone, and because of the very dangerous times, had to be armed for any possible danger. If the Norsemen came across a land where there were people, as was the case in Ireland, they remained in many cases on the land, married local girls, and took part in defending their new homeland together with the local inhabitants against possible new invaders. If on their expeditions they came across uninhabited islands or land, as was the case of Faro Island, Shetland Isles, the Hebrides, the Isle of Man, Iceland and Greenland, they established colonies and brought their families. They even visited Newfoundland and the mainland of the North America where they established colonies but the natives murdered them and their families.

It has been also said that they even drew a map of the "Vineland" in the 10th century. This map is said to have been in a monastery in Ireland at the time as Columbus set sail to the North America, and that he was aware of it.

What concerns the North America; when the Norsemen came they were too few, and therefore the natives were able to conquer them. Then much later the French came to Canada and to the southern parts of the North America, and the Dutch landed around the area we know today as New York, and because they both had guns they were able to overpower the natives. However, after them came the British, and because they had bigger guns they took the whole continent.

Considered that the Norsemen explored with their ships the North Atlantic area, not knowing whether they would come across any land, in my opinion, they have to be considered as explorers rather than marauders and "brave Vikings".

A very interesting aspect was brought up in the Finnish Mythology under the title of "Finnish Impact on the Tribal Origin of the Old English People". In the story they speak about the summer solstice and the midsummer fires which the old English had in common with the Finns and Estonians, and from whom the old English had a legend about "Wanna Issi, Koit and Ammarik".

If I remember correctly the name Estonia was unknown until they became independent in 1918 A.D. Before their independence the northern part of the Baltic area, north of Latvia was called Viro, because it was populated by the Finnic Viro tribe who spoke the same Finnic language as all other Finnic people at that time.

In the old Finnic language "Wanna Issi" meant old father, "Koit" meant dawn and "Ammarik" meant gloaming.

The Estonians preserved most of the ancient Finnic forms. But in the modern Finnish language the words for "old father" is "vanha isa", for "dawn" is "koi" and for "gloaming" is "iltahamara" (iltarusko). Thus "As the blush on Ammarik's face colours the midnight sky" means, as the blush of gloaming colours the midnight sky.

Though this is a legend, it seems to prove that among the Norsemen there must have been many Finnic people, the same way as among the "Varjaags" from Sweden, were many Finnic fighters who were well known to be trustworthy and reliable.

In Sweden the situation was somewhat similar to that of Norway.

As the Germanic merchants were forced, first by the Danes, who sacked their trading post in Rerik, and forced the Germanic merchants to move to Hedeby, and later by the Slavs who were advancing into the Saxons' homeland, to reroute their trading activities through Birka and Bergen.

The first ones to feel the economic pinch were the City of Visby in Gotland and Schone.

Though Gotland was partly populated already in the Stone Age the name Gotland came most likely from the Goths who were forced to move from their place of habitation by the Huns' invasion sometime in the 3rd – or 4th century as was mentioned earlier. The Goths invaded also the southern part of Sweden we know today as Schone or Scania, and forced the previous Germanic people to move further north where they assimilated with the Finnic people and were called by the name Svea. However, these Germanic people retained most of their Germanic language which, because of lingual assimilation with the Finnic language, became Swedish. Even today an outsider has difficulties to understand the Gotland's and Schone dialects.

Gotland had gone through tough times before, but due to the population growth and the then "slash and burn" agriculture, it couldn't sustain the growing population, and therefore they had to hold the unique lottery as was mentioned earlier. This new hardship which was caused by the loss of their lucrative trade to Birka, created a situation whereby most "Gotlanders" were ready to join Rurik on his expedition to the east to compensate the lost income. In addition to the loss of trade Gotland's and Schone's shipbuilders suffered also, because the Germanic merchants started to acquire ships from central Sweden, Finland and the Baltic countries because they were closer to their new trading routes. Therefore Gotland and Schone had a great surplus of ships which were then used by Rurik in his adventurous expeditions.

It is well known fact that the Finnic people were and are skilled wood workers, carpenters, boat and ship builders. I recall reading a book about the "Vikings" which was written, if I remember correctly, by Erik Berry, in this book he tells about a case in which a "Viking's" chieftain built a ship and the Finnic carpenters told him that the ship would sink because the planks (strakes) were too heavy, but he didn't believe them, therefore the Finnic carpenters carved the planks thinner at night to make the ship seaworthy. He also tells that a "Viking ship didn't leave the shores without having a Finn on board because they were able to predict the weather three or four days ahead because they lived so close to nature". In this case it must have been a Norsemen's ship because the Danes ("Normen") didn't usually venture far from the shores into the open sea.

In the same book he also mentioned that for example, the so-called Vancouver log cabin was originally built by Finnish carpenters, because it is built in certain kind of manner, whereby the logs are interlocked at the corners to withstand even the severest snow storms. This is a very important aspect in the northern climate, and because this kind of interlocking was known only to the Finnic people, it proves the wood working abilities of the Finnic people. In the Russian language this kind of interlocking is known as "Zarubka" (notch), people who lived as "Bastarnais" neighbours were known as "Zarubintzy". This, in my opinion, indicates that they were of Finnic origin.

Considering all these facts I strongly believe that all boats and ships in the Baltic Sea area were built by the Finnic people, especially as they were almost perfect replicas of the Finnic peoples' so called lake and river boats.

We also have to remember that the Finnic people migrated through the whole northern "Russia" from the Ural Mountains to the Atlantic Ocean, and that during their migration they had to use lakes and rivers. These boats and ships were also used by the Germanic merchants in the Baltic Sea area of which Tacitus, a Roman author of the second century A.D. noted that the Suiones' (Swedes') ships didn't have sails and were pointed at both ends contrary to the contemporary Mediterranean ships which had a blunt stern.

Therefore the suggestion that the “Vikings” ships were modeled after the Phoenicians ships doesn’t sound very convincing. Another characteristic is the fact that the Finnic people used oakum, flax and wool together with wood resin, or pitch to caulk the ships’ plank seams to make the ships flexible and to “ride the waves” instead of ploughing through the waves.

Therefore their boats and ships were fast and easy to steer.

It was mentioned earlier that as the Germanic merchants were forced to reroute their trading activities through Birka and Bergen, this new trading route was very detrimental to Gotland and Schone, but the central part of Sweden started to prosper especially Stockholm (Log Island). Stockholm used to be a fairly insignificant island where logs from central and northern Sweden were assembled into rafts to be floated to the southern shipyards. But now it had become an important outpost which all ships had to pass by to reach Birka.

All this didn’t go unnoticed by the Goths in Gotland and Schone. Therefore in 859 A.D. a small band of marauders decided to sail east, because they had seen how convoys of merchants’ ships sailed full of goods and wares destined either to Birka, or to the unknown eastern ports. By following the Germanic merchants’ ships and by using the same kind of vessels and same red and white striped sails to camouflage their intentions, they were able to follow them unnoticed to Olhava (Novgorod) where they demanded ransoms, and having obtained the ransoms they returned home to Gotland and Schone. As they came home and told about the riches in Olhava (Novgorod) and that the population there spoke Finnic language, Rurik, a Goth, and a nobleman assembled bigger expedition which was composed mainly of Finnic shipbuilders who had lost their jobs and were eager to join him.

These young men, who were strong, needed only a little training to become good fighters, were ideal for Rurik who set sail to Olhava around 860 A.D.

The Finnic people who had lived in northern and central “Russia” were fed up with Slavs who had already conquered the area we know today as Ukraine were happy to welcome Rurik and his men, especially, as most of them spoke their language. Therefore they elected them to be their leaders to stop the invading Slavs, who usually came to their towns and villages and brought liquor (vodka) with them, so that there were constantly fights and disturbances from the drunken people.

There are many explanations from where the name Russland was derived.

I believe that it came originally from the fact that Rurik who came from Roslagen (Rose County) which is pronounced in Swedish as Rooslagen” the same way as Lindros is pronounced “Lindroos”. Rurik who was a Goth and a nobleman claimed the newly conquered area for his country by naming it as Roosland, in other words, that the said land belonged to his Rose County. As Rurik called the conquered land Roos Land, the Germanic merchants who were in Olhava (Novgorod) started to call it Russland.

Here I want to mention that the trading post of Olhava in Rurik’s time was populated by the Finnic people, which fact is supported by the historical evidence, found in excavations which I will analyze in the next chapter. It was much later that the Slavs renamed it as Novgorod, which means “New Castle”. Interestingly Rurik and his men called the trading post of Olhava as “Holmgard”, which means “Island Court”.

Another big cause of polemics are the names “Varjaags and Varangians”. I believe that the name “Varjaags” came about as Rurik’s and his lieutenants Askold and Dir were loudly arguing about some achievements for which each of them claimed the credit. As Askold said “Det war jag” (It was I), Dir objected saying “Nej, det war jag” (No, it was I), and as this had been going on for quite a while, Rurik, who was sitting at the other end of the room stood up and said in a deep, solemn voice, “Var jag: (Was I). The Finnic people who heard them arguing didn’t understand what the guys were arguing about, they only heard, “var jag, var jag, var jag”, they started to call them “Varjaags”. Later the Slavic people called them “Varjiagi” pronounced “Varyagi”.

Similar name calling happened much later in the 30-Years' War as Swedish King Gustavus II Adolphus had a Finnish cavalry detachment whose war cry was "hakkaa pelotta" (hew without fear), and because their Swedish compatriots didn't understand what the war cry meant, they started to call them "Hakkapeliittas". That name stuck with the Finnish cavalry so that the Finnish Army had a magazine called "Hakkapeliitta", which was forced to be discontinued after The Second World War, as being too nationalistic and therefore "politically incorrect".

Regarding the name "Varangian", I believe, that the English speaking people found the "Varangian" name easier to pronounce as "Varjaag". For instance, my wife's name is Lumia, and most of the English speaking people pronounce it "Lumina". It is the same with many other names; Wien is Vienna, Munchen is Munich, Venezia is Venice, Beijing was Peking etc. etc. etc.

Maybe the Swedes found the name "Varjaag" offensive, too common and prosaic for their "Viking Sagas", and wanted to give it a more "believable and respectable twist", as they called "Varjaags" as "Varangians". In fact, there were only the Danish (Jutes) pirates who were "veeking" or "doing the bays", who robbed the merchants' ships and used the stolen ships in their raids to other countries. In their travels they used also the merchants red and white striped sails to make people to believe that they were peaceful merchants, only in Anglia the people could have warned their neighbours that these scamps came to "do their shores", or came "veeking", because they had lived in Jutland and knew them as pirates.

A very good illustration of these raids was the incident which took place on the Mediterranean coast as Charlemagne was crowned the Emperor of the Holy Roman Empire of which a Swiss monk of St, Gallen's Abbey tells a tale:

"As the newly crowned Emperor was eating peacefully in a Mediterranean town some ships were sighted approaching the shores. His people thought that they were merchants' ships but Charlemagne noticed after a glance that they were not filled with goods but with enemies". The monk continues his description of said incidence that: "When the Nomen heard that Charlemagne was there they vanished in marvellous swift flight". He also says that Charlemagne called the marauders "Worthless scamps".

To prove that many of the Varjaags were of Finnic origin and that Rurik and his lieutenants were able to communicate with the local Finnic people only through their Finnic men, I want to point out few facts: How did Rurik know that the river Volga flowed into Caspian Sea?

Who found the way to the well known Silk Road?

How did Rurik and his lieutenants Askold and Dir know that the river Dniepr flowed into the Black Sea, and in that way they would be able to reach Constantinople?

Wouldn't they have perished in the vast wilderness of the land we call today Russia without their Finnic men who were able to communicate with the local population?

Aren't therefore all their tales of "Vikings" trading ventures in that vast and sparsely populated land to be classified as another "Viking Saga"?

Don't therefore all the stories about "Brave Vikings" being also merchants who opened a new trading routes sound somewhat ridiculous?

A very good example was the case in Kiev, as the "Vikings" came to Kiev they sent a message to Greek merchants claiming to be peaceful trades and invited the Greeks to trade with them. And as soon as the Greeks arrived the "Vikings" murdered them and confiscated all their ships and wares, which the "Vikings" then sold in the Middle-Eastern markets.

Would you say that this was an act of peaceful trade?

Would it encourage other merchants to enter into any kind of trading relations with that sort of "merchants"?

According to my information, the last raid by these marauders from Sweden was made around 1050 A.D. to Finland which was at that time an integral part of Sweden, and was called by the Swedes "Eastland", because it was and is on the east side of the Gulf of Botnia (Ostroboten). About 2000 men in about 200 ships and boats travelled along the river Kokemaki, some 250 kilometres inland to Hauho, pronounced as "Howho", where the Finnish tribe Hame (in Swedish "Tavast") defeated them and chased them out of Finland. The river Kokemaki flows into the Gulf of Botnia at around 61 degrees parallel where the city of Pori (Bjorneborg is located. And of this raid there are Runic writings on the cliffs of Schone and drawings of the ships on the cliffs in Hauho, Finland, which were found in 2000 A.D.

CHAPTER XIII

To have a better understanding of the impact of the Baltic and "Russian" trade on the European economy we have to look back in time even into the pre-Christian era.

Already at the time of Herodotus the "International" merchants acquired wheat in the 5th B.C. from the so called Scythians. It was even said that "The builders of Parthenon would have gone hungry without the said wheat".

Later in 14 A.D. the Roman merchants acquired from the same area grain, hemp, nuts and hide. At that time the area we call today the Ukraine was populated by the Germanic Bastarnais as was mentioned in one of the previous chapters, and was well known as the bread basket of Europe even before The First World War.

From the northern parts of "Russia" the Germanic merchants acquired furs, honey, and wax, and most of these commodities were transported by using the rivers which flow through the Baltic countries into the Baltic Sea. From the Baltic nations the Liivs, Latts and Viro (Lithuania, Latvia and Estonia respectively) they also acquired honey and wax and especially amber, later they acquired from the Baltic countries also timber.

From the northern and western parts of the Baltic Sea, that is from Finland, Sweden and Norway, the Germanic merchants acquired furs, tar, pitch, timber, ships, boats, iron, copper and salted fish.

We have to remember that in those days there weren't any roads until the Romans built their famous roads, and that was done only in the areas they had conquered. The rest of Europe relied mainly on waterways for the transportation of goods and wares. These waterways were known mainly to the merchants, and most people were totally unaware of them, because the communication was very slow, and especially in the lawless times it was even dangerous to reveal the safe routes, therefore the merchants kept their trading routes, secret.

However, the most surprising fact is that even today many "historians" are quite ignorant of the events which took place in Fenno-Scandia, the Baltic countries and the area we know today as ex-Soviet Union. I have read some hair rising stories about these so called "barbarians in God forsaken area".

In those days the conquerors and robbers came with the sword, murdered, plundered and burned peoples' homes, and in some cases took their young people and children into slavery as in the cases of the Arab slave traders, and later the Romans.

A very good illustration of these raids into Eastern Europe is a written account of the Arabian Ahmad bin Fudhlan who was sent in 921 A.D. by the Califf Muqtadir from Bagdad to "Russia", where he tells of the acquisition of furs, wax, slaves and amber for the Islamic Empire. In the same written account Ahmad bin Fudhlan speaks about the "barbarian" background of the northerners.

In the first place; who was the "barbarian" the slave trader, or his victim?

Secondly; the fact that he took slaves, in my opinion, clearly indicates what kind of acquisition was in question.

And thirdly; considering that amber was obtainable only from the south-eastern parts of the Baltic Sea area, his "acquisition" must have reached the Baltic Sea.

It is therefore a wonder that the Finnic people who populated the whole northern part of Europe, from Ural Mountains to the Baltic Sea and even to the Atlantic Ocean, hated all strangers with a dark complexion and who killed without any questions. Were they racist?

Are today's Sudanese racist because they hate the Arab slave traders?

Considering all these facts and arguments it was very dangerous for the Germanic merchants to enter said area, and to try to convince the local people that they came with peaceful intentions and not to murder, plunder or to take slaves. The Germanic merchants were never involved in the slave trade, because they considered that slave trade was bad for friendly trading relations, therefore the slave traders made it very difficult, time consuming and a pain staking task for the Germanic merchants to gain the trust of Finnic people and their merchants, especially as they spoke a completely different language. To overcome this disadvantage to convince the people of their peaceful intentions, the Germanic merchants used their Finnic shipmates whom they had hired from central and northern Sweden Finland included and from Norway as interpreters. The Germanic merchants needed buyers for their products which they traded in exchange for furs, honey, wax etc., and not slaves.

Therefore they were able to gain the trust of the people, and at the same time they acted as a vehicle of cultural exchange.

It was a well known fact that wherever the Germanic merchants opened up a trading post and established a Germanic quarter they always built a church, because of Christianity's pacifying effect on the heathen population.

This was also noted by Bishop Ilmari Salomies in his book "Finnish Church History" where he states that although the first Crusade to Finland was made around 1150 A.D. the Finns had contacts with Christianity centuries before the Crusade. The Germanic merchants had also built a church in Olhava (Novgorod) called Saint Peter's Church.

According to the Rambaub's "History of Russia", Rurik built a castle and a fort in "Novgorod" in 9th century, and is believed to have been the founder of the first Russian dynasty which reigned from 867 – 1598 A.D.

At that time as Rurik came to Olhava the name "Novgorod" must have been unknown, because the whole northern "Russia" was populated by various Finnic tribes and nations who didn't speak Slavic language and "Novgorod" means in the Slavic language "New Town or New Castle", even Rurik and his men called it "Holmgard" as mentioned earlier.

According to my information, during its long history the town had burned five times and had always been rebuilt on the same place due to its favourable location. In excavations the archaeologists have found pieces of birch bark with writings in Komi Finnic language in a script resembling Cyrillic alphabet. Because in Rurik's time most of the area we know today as "Russia" was populated by Finnic people who spoke about the same language though with a slightly different dialect, it was very easy for their merchants to get along with each other, the same way, as the Germanic tribes were able to communicate with each other. Later as the Slavs started to move into the area some of the Finnic tribes adopted a few Slavic words for items, or meanings which were strange to them, but the basic spoken language among most of the tribes was and still is the same. And about that fact I want to mention a case which took place during The Second World War, as the Finns had captured a Red Army's soldier and started to interrogate him in Russian, they couldn't get a word out of him.

Then they tried to ask him in German, in Swedish, in English, and even in Spanish, thinking that he could be one of the so called “Spanish freedom fighters”, with the same results. Finally one of the Finnish interrogators said in Finnish “Se on kuuromykka” (he is deaf and mute), and to that the prisoner asked in a pure Carelian dialect “A mist sie uot miun kielen oppint” (from where have you learned my language). This, in my opinion, clearly indicates that there are still people in northern Russia who speak their ancestors’ language. And another proof of this are the Saami people (Laplanders) whose language is closely related to Finno Ugrian languages, and due to their reindeer herding, were left during the Stalin’s purges mainly in peace.

When exactly the town Olhava (Holmgard) was renamed to Novgorod, is unknown to me, because the Russians, especially during Stalin’s time, have projected the Russian history according to their “proletarian ideology” for to be “politically correct”.

It was mentioned earlier that many “historians” have written about the great European migrations, and about the so called “Viking” era, which lasted about 250 – 300 years, from about 800A.D. to 1100 A.D. However, I have never read a historical book which would have had accounts of what really caused the people to migrate, or what actually were the reasons for the “Viking era”, neither have I read explanations why the “Viking era” abruptly stopped? Here I want to mention that with today’s modern computers it has been calculated that in the year 1000A.D. there were only about 300 million people on our planet, all continents included. According to my understanding said kind of migration couldn’t have been great nor numerous.

The reason of the northern marauders “Vikings” raids I analyzed in one of the previous chapters.

All I want to add is that, according to my understanding, the “Vikings” were marauders and not merchants, as historical evidence proves, I have never seen or heard of any “Vikings” maps or sea-charts of the Baltic Sea, or the area we know today as “Russia”, except the maps of “Vinland”, and North-Atlantic including the islands which are north of Scotland.

Most ancient maps and sea-charts for islands, rocks, reefs, shoals and safe passages, according to my knowledge, were drawn by the merchants. This was demonstrated after The First World War around 1920 A.D. as Sweden tried to grab Aland (Ahvenanmaa) from Finland with a fraudulent map, showing that all the islands between Finland and Aland were between Sweden and Aland, and therefore Aland (Ahvenanmaa) belonged to Sweden. Their King Gustavus V Adolf (Bernadotte) presented said map in the League of Nations in Geneva, Switzerland, together with their claim. However, Germany presented in Finland’s defence an ancient Hanse map showing correct location of the islands therefore the League of Nations decided the dispute in Finland’s favour, with the condition that Aland (Ahvenanmaa) had a semi-autonomous status.

According to the historical accounts the so called “Viking era” ended around 1150 A.D. and after that there weren’t any “Viking” raids recorded.

Around the same time also the “migrations ended in Europe. All this coincided with the fact that the Germanic farmer came up with an iron plough which revolutionized agriculture in the world.

Previously people scratched a shallow groove in the soil to plant a seed now, with the iron plough they could make deep furrows to turn the soil and utilize its full ability to produce. The areas which previously considered exhausted were ploughed, the soil was rejuvenated and yielded better crops than ever before.

Based on the excavations and archaeological finds of hoards of precious metals, such as gold, silver and copper, in the form of coins (among them also middle-eastern coins), ornaments and ingots, in Scandinavia, Finland, the Baltic countries and “Russia”, dating back to the 8th century A.D. and older, it is safe to assume that the merchants of the said nations had vast trading relations with the Arab world and Constantinople long before Rurik the Varjag, went to Olhava (Novgorod).

The fact that among these precious artefacts were ingots (bars) indicates that they were valued according to their weight, and not by their shape into which they were carved or moulded. In those days there weren't any art dealers or art shops. However, the merchants in the Baltic countries, in “Russia”, in Finland, and also in Scandinavia, knew that the Germanic merchants, due to their close trading relations with the Italian merchant Patrician (Princes), were familiar with the middle-eastern coins and accepted them as tender, therefore knowing that the Germanic merchants would accept the Arab coins, they also accepted them accordingly. There have been many Arabic coins among the buried treasures not only in the said countries, but also elsewhere in Europe. The fact that these treasures dated back to the 8th century and earlier, in my opinion, proves that they were buried over a century before the so called “Viking era” had even started.

We have to keep in mind that those were lawless and very dangerous times, and that there weren't any safe places where the merchants would have been able to keep their valuables. They didn't dare to keep them at their homes because that would have been inviting the robbers to sack their homes, which would have endangered their families. Therefore the only possible place would have had to be someplace outside their homes, but close enough that they could reach them at any time, and so they buried their valuables close to their homes, to camouflage the hiding place of their treasures, they covered them with manure. Most likely the merchants felt that the robbers wouldn't have the time, or the interest to poke around in piles of manure in search of valuables. The robbers' activities were usually sort of “hit and run” operations. They couldn't stay in one area for a longer period of time because it would have alerted the entire neighbourhood and they would have been in trouble themselves, as mentioned earlier. A very good example was the case of Charlemagne on the coast of the Mediterranean Sea, as was also mentioned earlier, how the marauders swiftly disappeared. The “Vikings” didn't have time to bury their loot, nor did they have big piles of manure at their disposal, and if they would have acquired said manure from the local farmers, the farmers would have become suspicious. And on the top of that; from whom did these marauders (“Vikings”) would have to hide their stolen treasure?

The times weren't the same as some 800 – 1000 years later when the Caribbean and other pirates had to hide their loots from authorities. In those days the merchants usually had their own country estates, or farms, for their families' necessities such as food, clothing etc., therefore they had also domesticated animals and therefore they had manure which they used as fertilizer. And even if they would have been forced to buy some additional manure from their neighbouring farmers to hide their valuables, nobody would have paid any attention. Later, as people came across such buried treasures they had wondered what was the reason to bury valuable in piles of manure, even the “northern storytellers” who had attributed the buried treasures to their “beloved Vikings”, have been puzzled; why did they bury the valuables into manure and from where did the “Vikings” get all the manure?

A very good example of these hidden treasures was the cases in Viipuri (Vyborg), Finland; during the construction work of sewers in 1870 A.D> under the streets of Luostarinkatu, Uudenportinkatu, Vahtitorninkatu and the adjacent streets, a great amount of silver and copper coins were discovered, covered with a great amount of manure, which appeared to have been used as a filler.

When were the said treasures buried is unknown, but during the so called "Viking era" Viipuri (Vyborg) was never sacked by the "Vikings", nor had it been raided by any other kind of robbers because at that time it was still a fairly small trading post. It was about 250 years later (after the "Viking" era had ended around 1050 A.D.) that Viipuri (Vyborg) started to grow into a prosperous city, and the fortress of Viipuri (Vyborg) was built in 1293 A.D. by Swedish Marshal Torgils Knutsson together with the Bishop of Vesteras.

We should also remember that on the island of Gotland in one small area was found 110.000 coins, 1000 ornaments and 2300 bars of silver, which were buried in great amount of manure.

Therefore considering all these facts it is very questionable whether the so called "Vikings" buried treasures.

What concerns Viipuri (Vyborg) there was another interesting aspect;

Finland was considered for a long time to be a part of Sweden and was called "Eastland". As then Magnus Birgersson, who was the King of Sweden, died in 1290 A.D. his successor to the throne was only 10 years old, and therefore Sweden had a caretaker government, where the strongest member was Marshal Torgils Knutsson. Because of the instability in Sweden in 1292 A.D. the Duchy of Olhava ("Novgorod") attacked Finland and created great havoc especially in Hame (Tavast). This attack damaged also the trading activities. Therefore Sweden decided to retaliate in 1293 A.D. Marshal Torgils Knutsson together with the Bishop of Vesteras attacked the invaders and occupied the western part of Carelia, and for that reason they built the fortress of Viipuri (Vyborg) and guaranteed to the Germanic merchants (The Hanse Patricians) free passage to Olhava (Novgorod).

There must have been a very strong reason why this guarantee was given to the Germanic merchants, and not to Swedish merchants.

The fortress of Viipuri (Vyborg) was built on a small island about 170 metres long and about 120 metres wide, and according to my information some 50 metres from the shore.

It allegedly also had a tunnel from the fortress to the mainland which was known only to a very small selected group of people. Most likely the tunnel caved in during the centuries and was flooded, and therefore it was useless, and forgotten. There were only rumours about the tunnel but people considered them as being "old women's tales". The entrance to the tunnel from the fortress was called "Matt's hole" (Matin reika), and the location of the entrance from the mainland had been forgotten until in 1840, a group of construction workers who were working on the street called Karjaportinkatu, fell with all their tools into the tunnel, where they also found an iron door.

This iron door had the "six petal rose" decoration which was the Heijno (Hainault-Haino) merchant Princes' (Patricians) well known insignia, and was later called "the Hanse rose".

In my opinion, this clearly indicates that the Heijno (Hainault-Haino) merchant Princes were instrumental in the erection of the fortress of Vyborg (Viipurin linna). Later in the same year the workers found a part of the said tunnel closer to the fortress, and about 15 years later an additional part of the tunnel was found with steps going down in the direction of the fortress.

We have to remember that in those days most of the Church Prelates were of the merchant Patrician families, and that the bishops had their own armies for crusades. Therefore I strongly believe that the Bishop of Vesteras, who joined Marshal Torgils Knutsson in his war against the "Novgorodians", was from the Heijno Patrician family. And therefore also the Heijno (Hainault-Haino) merchant Princes financed the building of the fortress of Vyborg (Viipuri), and that in return they were guaranteed the safe passage to Olhava (Novgorod). This in my opinion would explain the iron door with "the Hanse rose", and the fact that only very few were aware of the existence of the tunnel.

We also have to take into consideration that according to the historical facts, that at time Vesteraas was a Bishopric for the whole Sweden, and as such was the capital city of Sweden until Stockholm replaced it, and also that because half of Stockholm was owned by the Hanse Patricians they installed half of the city Council.

CHAPTER XIV

In those days nothing happened “overnight” or instantly, especially changes in trading patterns, which took a long time, in many cases, even several generations. Therefore most changes had to be planned centuries in advance as was the case of the Baltic trade, which started most likely in the early 9th century, and was fully operational at the time when the Germanic merchants lost their access to the Baltic Sea, due to the Slavs invasion of Hedeby in 1066 A.D.

In central and western Europe the situation had also changes drastically as the Franken lost their hegemony. In the western part of the Franken Kingdom “Frankreich” the Germanic tribes and Celts who had been under Roman rule for centuries, we know them as French, and in the eastern parts of the Franken Kingdom, which weren’t conquered by the Romans, the Germanic tribes preserved their Germanic languages and their Germanic identities, and we know them as Germans.

After the last Carolingian ruler died in 911 A.D. the eastern Dukes elected one of their own ranks, Duke Konrad, to be their king. This caused the severance from the original Franken Kingdom, and was the beginning of modern Germany.

As Konrad couldn’t succeed in establishing a strong Germanic kingdom, his successors, Heinrich I of Saxony and his son Otto I the Great, were able to do it.

At that time the Dukes and other rulers who were installed by Charlemagne (Karl der Grosse), had usurped too much power and wealth for themselves at the expense of the Empire. And to change all that Otto the Great, the King of Saxony, who was the ruler of the Kingdom of Germany (Deutsches Reich) in 936 A.D. – 973 A. D. was crowned by Pope in 962 A.D. as the Emperor of the Holy Roman Empire, started to centralize the government by repealing the tax collection powers of the Dukes, Margraves and Counts. This new arraignment turned the Margraves and Counts into “civil servants”, and the Empire’s tax collection duties and judicial matters were given to literate Bishops and Abbots, for which purpose the Emperor created bishoprics. And from then on the Bishops and Abbots collected the Empire’s taxes, tolls and custom duties, and looked also after the mint and judicial matters, though the Dukes, “Margraveships” and Counties respectively, their powers and especially their incomes were reduced considerably. Due to the literate officials, the collection of taxes, custom duties and tolls, became more just and efficient, which was more acceptable to the people and benefitted the Empire and the Emperor. However, this new reorganization created problems to the Dukes, Margraves and Counts who lost a great part of their lucrative income.

This new system seemed to work perfectly well because it strengthened the Empire and gave more power to the Emperor. However, in the long run it was equally detrimental to the Empire and to the Emperor as Charlemagne’s organization had been. As the Dukes, Margraves and Counts became greedier during the old system, so did the Bishops and Abbots also become greedy and power hungry under the new system. They began also to act as princes, by accumulating more wealth, and organized even their own military detachments to wage wars. And when they died their wealth and lands were considered as belonging to the Church, because due to their celibacy, they didn’t officially have any direct descendants, therefore the Popes who ruled the Church began to wield secular power.

They assembled their own armies, and there were many armed conflicts, especially in Italy between the Emperors' and Popes' armies, which was caused by the fact, that although the Pope was officially the head of the Church who elevated priests to bishops, the Emperor's prerogative was to install the bishops into bishoprics, which were very profitable offices. Therefore the Emperors started to sell the offices to the highest bidder regardless of their fitness or character.

In both cases, in the systems of Charlemagne and Otto the Great, everything worked perfectly well for the Empire as long as there was a strong Emperor, but in the case of a weak Emperor things went "out of hands" and the empire suffered. In the system of Charlemagne, the Margraves and Counts started to behave like kings of an independent principality, and in the system of Otto I the Great the Bishops and Abbots started to claim that they were accountable only to the Popes, and that led to the bloody hostilities between the Emperors and the Popes, as mentioned earlier.

In addition, we have to remember that in those days the Bishops came from the leading merchants' families who favoured the merchants in many ways, and that created jealousies among the Dukes, Margraves and Counts, especially against the Hainault (Haino) merchants, who also had a ducal rank, and therefore in their opinion, shouldn't have been favoured.

To compensate the loss of their revenue caused by Otto I the Great new tax collection system, the Dukes, Margraves and Counts started their wars to expand their territories, and in that way to have more tax payers.

For these wars the nobility needed funds, but in those days there weren't any banks from where to borrow money, the Church prohibited Christians to lend money against interest because it considered the interest charges as usury. Therefore to avoid borrowing money from the Jewish moneylenders who charged 40% - 60% interest from which the nobility had already many unpleasant experiences, they decided to sell parcels of land to the merchants who had expressed their interest in land acquisitions. In many cases the merchants established trading posts, or depots on the lands they had purchased from the rulers, said land areas often grew to become cities and even city states. In some cases the merchants bought forested lands, to be able to have timber for their ship building undertakings from their own forests, because especially during the peaceful times, in many cases, the nobility and rulers took advantage of the merchants' needs and charged high prices for timber.

And then began the Crusades in 1093 A.D.

For the Crusades, the rulers who were also land owners, needed money to assemble fighting detachments. The acquisition of arms for their Knights and foot soldiers required a great deal of funds, and they also had to have money for the provisions for their men during their travels through friendly lands, however, in those days the armies lived off the conquered lands.

All this presented for the rulers a big problem, especially as they didn't want to get tied up with the Jewish money lenders' high interest rates. Therefore they offered to the merchants more land.

However, the merchants who had already bought land from the rulers were more interested in purchasing administration rights for the lands they already owned. So, to obtain required funds, the rulers were forced to relinquish their rights of the said lands in favour of the merchants.

The merchants bought also trading privileges and travelling rights through the rulers' lands on the condition that the rights and privileges were forever and that the rulers, their heirs, and their descendants didn't have the right to charge them tolls, or any charges for passing through their lands and to trade with their subjects. This led to the fact that the leading merchants had exclusive rights to trade.

As soon as the merchants had obtained the administration rights within the lands, which they had purchased from the rulers, the merchants gave the people total freedom on their lands, even to the point that those within their jurisdiction didn't have to pay any taxes to the previous rulers, and therefore the trading posts which the merchants had established, started to grow into towns and cities. The merchants paid the usual contributions to the Dukes, Margraves and Counts within whose lands their cities were located and paid also the dues belonging to the Emperors. Considering that the merchants' cities were like private enterprises, and were in fact their estates, and they also paid all administration costs of their cities. They installed all Aldermen from amongst their own literate relatives, and from their fellow merchants. Therefore only those people, who worked in one, or another capacity for the "owner-merchants", had the right to live in their cities.

Private ownership and the sanctity of home were recognized in those days as they are today. If you buy a piece of land and build a factory on it, or turn it into a commercial farm, and to accommodate your employees, you build homes for them, it doesn't mean that everyone who likes the homes has the right to move into them. Or does it? It was the same with a city which was owned by the merchants. The principle of "My home is my castle" was strictly observed.

In history books the "historians" have usually credited the rulers of the whole area in which a village, or the trading post had grown to the size of a city completely disregarding the fact that only a very few cities in the world were established by the ruler's decree and grown to become a prominent city. Most of the cities grew from a very modest beginning only because of their favourable locations as trading posts, which originally were created by the merchants as bartering places.

Due to the burgeoning growth and especially as the people who lived in the merchants' cities began to say that "City air is freedom", many people tried to force their way into the said cities. Therefore to limit the influx of people into their cities (their homes) and to protect their cities and themselves against robbers, many of them were robber barons, who in many cases were rulers' tax collectors, and tried to line also their own pockets by robbing the merchants. Therefore the merchants had to erect city walls for their own and their employees' protection. In other words, the merchants' cities were their private enterprises where the owner pays all expenses and decides who works for him and to what post employee is assigned. This led to the fact that the merchants, the owners of the cities, also decided who had the right to live within their cities' walls. All strangers whether Gentiles or Jews were prohibited to stay overnight in their cities. During the daytime they had the right to sell their wares in the city's marketplace if they had paid the usual fees and tolls set by the city owners, the merchants, but during the night hours, before the city gates were closed they had to leave the city.

A very good example of the dangerous times and the merchants' fear of strangers were demonstrated much later on October 22, 1275 A.D. as the Emperor Charles IV came to visit the city of Luebeck. The Emperor came with a very large delegation of Dukes, Margraves, Counts, Barons, Bishops and other dignitaries so that merchants of Luebeck became suspicious. And the Emperor with his wife had to wait until the merchants were fully satisfied that there was nothing sinister about his visit before they opened the city gates and permitted him to enter the city with his enormous delegation.

However, even a runaway slave could become a city dweller (Buerger) if he or she was able to remain in the city one year and one night. Such was the case, that if a craftsman gave them a job as an apprentice, or hired a domestic maid, and after one year and one night the slave became a full-fledged free city dweller (a Buerger).

When the Crusades ended many of the nobility who survived the Crusades, returned home to regret that they had made agreements with the merchants and therefore nullified the agreements unilaterally, confiscated the lands which they had sold to the merchants and abolished their administration rights.

Many of the descendants, whose parents didn't survive the Crusades, did the same as they felt that the agreements weren't binding because they were made with "mere merchants", who, in their opinion, were commoners whom they could treat the way they pleased.

To demonstrate the lawlessness of the times and the jealousies between the ruling classes I want to mention the case of Richard the Lion-Heart; as Richard the Lion-Heart returned from the Crusades he was detained by the Austrians who demanded high ransom for his release.

I believe that the Austrians knew that Richard the Lion-Heart was closely related to the Hainault (Haino) merchant Patricians (Princes).

The Hainault (Haino) merchant Princes in Brugge (Bruges) had at that time, their own problems with the Flemish Counts, the King of France and the Duke of Normandy, and were unable to come up with the ransom money.

The Hainault (Haino – Heyno) merchant Patricians from Luebeck had also entered into agreement with the Emperor Frederick I Barbarossa because of his Crusade obligations, and therefore had tied up temporarily their resources.

This left only the Hainault (Haino) merchant Princes of Hamburg and even for them it took quite a while before they were able to come up with the high ransoms, and if I remember correctly, Richard the Lion-Heart had to languish for many months in Austrian captive before they let him to return to England.

As the cocky rulers broke the old agreements which were made to last forever, the merchants lost their investments without any compensation. The only time they received "compensation" was centuries later when the London Steelyard was sold, and the funds were sent to Luebeck, Hamburg and Bremen.

CHAPTER XV

The case of Brugge (Bruges) was exceptional, it was mentioned earlier that Hainault (Haino) merchant Patricians forced Charles the Bald, the King of West Franken to recognize the Hainault ducal status which they have had for millenniums as noted in previous chapters, and to nominate one of their family's member by the name of Baldwin, as the Count of the Counties of Flanders and Hainaut in 862 A. D.

We also have to consider that in those days and even much later, cheaters and imposters were put to pillory for a day or two after which they were either beheaded, or hanged publicly as a warning to others. This led to the fact that the relatives "kinfolks" were the only trusted and reliable people.

Therefore to identify themselves the merchants used signs and symbols which were revealed only to trusted people. This they had done for millenniums while travelling on their trade missions abroad.

We also have to remember that marriages were arranged by the parents, so that finally the merchant Patricians of Rome, Venice, Pisa, Florence and Hainault who had ducal rank were related to each other, and used the same "six-petal-flower" design as their insignia.

By following the trail of the six-petal-flower design from excavations, archaeological finds, historical buildings, many of which have been demolished to prevent the identification of the original owners, and from pictures of the Church Prelates in chasubles which are embroidered with the "six-petal-flower" design, the entire European history emerges in a completely different light.

Many "historians" have been too busy recounting the "glorious" bloody conquests, glorifying murders and other atrocities, thus giving a picture of "brutal barbarians", completely ignoring the hard work which was done to civilize the people and to improve their lives.

For example, the original merchant Patricians were the merchants of Rome, Venice, Pisa, Florence and Hainault who beside their own city states, duchies and counties organized and ruled the commercial activities of the whole Europe for centuries if not millenniums, they were the sole merchant Patricians there has ever been.

You may have read stories of “new patricians” written by some “historians” and “windbags” or statements of upstarts claiming to be patricians. However, none of them have ever been able to produce a single shred of evidence that their ancestors were even free city dwellers as late as 16th century.

Therefore all the daims and stories of “new patricians” are fabrications of megalomaniacal fantasies. There simply cannot be any “new patricians” because there aren’t any Emperors on whose council they could sit as equals to the Emperor. In olden days these “modern megalomaniacs” would have been put to pillory.

A merchant Patrician status wasn’t earned nor granted by anyone, not even by the Emperors.

As merchant Patricians conducted their commercial activities abroad in many countries which weren’t a part of any empire, and therefore it wasn’t in any Emperor’s realm to grant such a status. The Emperors could not decide when, where, or how the merchants could or should conduct their trading activities. In fact, they were merchant Princes in their own right, therefore they were called Patricians neither could the Patrician status have been bought regardless of how wealthy the aspirants would have been. The merchant Patrician’s status was a ducal rank which was inherited from father to sons by all Patrician merchants’ male descendants according to the ancient pre-biblical system which was also incorporated in the Hammurabi’s code of laws. Therefore their sons were Princes, their daughters Princesses and their wives were considered Duchesses.

In any event as the Hainault (Haino) ducal Patrician rank had been recognized by Charles the Bald and one of their family members by the name of Baldwin who was married to Judith the Emperor’s daughter, became the first Count of Flanders and Hainaut counties as Baldwin I Iron Arm, the Royal House of Hainault was officiated in Europe, and the Hainault (Haino) merchant Patricians were able to start the work of building the well known trading post of Brugge (Bruges).

The land on which the merchant City of Brugge (Bruges) was built, wasn’t purchased from any Duke or Count because the merchant Patricians owned and ruled the whole County of Hainaut (Haino), neither did they have to buy the administration rights for the city. This led to the fact that there wasn’t Duke or a Count who would have been able to repeal the City’s administration rights, and start to collect taxes from the merchants and from the citizens. This situation created great deal of jealousies in the neighbouring Dukes and Counts.

As long as the Counts of the Hainaut (Haino) County were members of the House of Hainault (Haino) the whole county prospered, especially the City of Brugge (Bruges) which was ruled by the Hainault Patricians, who also acted as the City’s Aldermen, who fortified the city with a wall against possible invaders. But as the neighbouring Dukes and Counts conquered the County of Hainaut, the City of Brugge (Bruges) suffered great losses.

We have to remember that the times were very turbulent and lawless, and that a prosperous merchant city was a very tempting prize for the neighbouring Dukes and Counts, especially as the Italian merchant Patricians, such as Di Medici from Florence had established their depots in Brugge (Bruges). The Italian money changers had also established there their exchanging office in front of the Van der Beurse family’s Inn. This Dutch name “Beurse” became later worldwide known as the name for the place where money was and is traded.

According to the historical accounts; “As Count Charles the Good the descendant of Baldwin I the Iron Arm (Hainault) was murdered in 1127 A.D. and Clito the son of the Duke of Normandy became the ruler in Flanders and Diederik van den Elzas became the Count of Hainaut who levied heavy taxes on all citizens of Brugge (Bruges) the city went through very difficult times.”

Many “historians” have written about the times from the murder of Charles the Good in 1127 to the famous Battle of the Spurs in 1302, which I have found somewhat confusing, because the time between 1127 A.D. and 1302 A.D. is 175 years.

It has been said many times that “history is written about the people for the people”, and that “it all depends who is writing it and for whom it is written”.

Historical evidence proves that as Geoffrey (Geoffroi) IV the Fair, Plantagenet (Hainault) 10th Count of Anjou (1129 A.D. – 1151 A.D.) Duke of Normandy (1144 A.D. – 1150 A.D.) at the age of 15 married in 1127 A.D. Matilda (Maud, the English Empress) the daughter of the King Henry I of England, he became Henry II, the King of England. And granted to his kinsmen the Hainault (Haino) merchant Patricians the exclusive rights to trade with England, at that time the Hainault merchant Princes (Patricians) were already well known in London as was mentioned earlier concerning the “De Institutis Londonie of Ethelred (978 A.D. - 1016 A.D.)”.

From then on they started to expand their trade throughout England from their trading post called The London Steelyard, so that during the Hanse Era they had trading posts and depots in York, Hull, Bristol, Norwich, Ipswich, Yarmouth, Lynn Regis, Boston, Southampton, Grimsby, Canterbury and Rochester.

According to the history books Anglo – Hanseatic relations lasted for about 500 years until the Queen Elizabeth I terminated their trading agreements unilaterally at the end of the 16th century.

Due to the fact that the Hanse merchants were well-known for their honour, honesty and probity they were also invited to trade in Scotland where we find their name honoured in legends, and songs of William Wallace (1297 A.D.).

In 1197 A.D. Richard I the Lion – Heart, the King of England, the son of Henry II Plantagenet (Hainault-Haino), signed a treaty in the Latin language (using the Roman alphabet) with the Count of Hainaut which stated: “Let all who read this letter know that this is the agreement and treaty between Richard King of England and Baldwin Count of Flanders and Haino his kinsman.....etc.” as written in The Plantagenet Chronicles by Dr. Elizabeth Hallan.

In those days the working language in English Parliament was French and Latin. This was changed as the English Parliament adopted the English language in 1363 A.D.

Baldwin I the Iron Arm and the first Count of Hainaut (Haino) County, was a member of the Hainault Dynasty, therefore he and all his descendants had the right to use the “six-petal-flower” design as their insignia. For example, Geoffrey or Henry II the King of England, Plantagenet, and his descendants also had the right to use the said insignia.

The six-petal-rose design decorates even today the outer edge of the English Throne.

The Hainault Merchant Princes were also known for their ability to plan all their activities well ahead of time. They had been instrumental in the rerouting of the Baltic trade through the North Way (“Nord Weg”). They also had acquired a large area of land in Holland where they had established a city which they named “Heino” written in Roman alphabet and pronounced as Latin Haino. Later the whole acquired area was named County of Heino.

Here I want to mention that the name of the County of Hainaut is pronounced in French as Latin Haino, but in German and Dutch languages pronounced differently. Therefore as the City of Heino grew into the County of Heino, the Germans and Dutch started to call the County of Hainaut as Hennegau.

The County of Heino was mentioned by the Bishop of Utrecht in Holland in 1236 A.D. and was later merged with the County of Raalte, and only the City of Heino retained its name until present days.

A very interesting incident happened after The Second World War as the City Council of the City of Heino named a street Canada Street in honour of the Canadian troops who liberated the city from the Nazis.

All activities of the merchant Patricians were geared toward peaceful co-existence with all people, therefore they were ill prepared for armed conflicts. However, because many descendants of Baldwin I The Iron Arm became rulers in various parts of Europe and the Middle East, the merchants were invited to practise their peaceful trade which brought prosperity to the population. In Jerusalem and in Armenia the merchants had well known connection to the "Silk Road", and to the Far East as mentioned in previous chapters, and because trade usually brought peace and prosperity, the rulers favoured their merchant kinsmen in many ways. However, this created among other rulers a great deal of jealousies and greed.

In Europe during the centuries there were innumerable descendants of the Hainault Patricians who became either rulers, or whose female descendants married rulers, and in that capacity were able to influence their husbands to favour merchants.

The roster is very long because the families were large therefore I will mention only a few members of the Hainault (Haino) Dynasty.

In 1080 A.D. Adele Hainault married Canute IV King of Denmark.

In 1099 A.D. Geoffrey the Count of Flanders became the King of Jerusalem, and was succeeded by several Baldwins.

In 1127 A.D. Geoffrey the Duke of Normandy and the Count of Anjou became the King of England as Henry II (Plantagenet-Hainault) and was succeeded by several members of the Royal House of Hainault. Matilda, the sister of Richard the Lion Heart and a daughter of Henry II (Plantagenet) married Henry the Lion of Saxony.

The name Plantagenet was given to Geoffrey (Henry II) by his friends because he wore a broom corn on his person. I believe that the broom corn was a way of demonstration by Geoffrey against the cocky fighting classes (nobility) who considered him to be of lesser status because of his family's merchant background not understanding that his ducal rank was much older, and therefore higher than their own. The Plantagenet (Hainault) ruled England until 1399 A.D. as Richard II was deposed by Henry IV (Bolinbroke) of the House of Lancaster who was related to the Plantagenet through female descendant, as later were the Tudors.

In 1131 A.D. Melisande (Melinda) Hainault became the Queen of Jerusalem.

In 1142 A.D. Baldwin (Hainault) became the King of Armenia which at that time was fairly large kingdom as mentioned earlier.

In 1204 A.D. Baldwin IX (Hainault) the Count of Flanders and Hainaut became the Emperor of Romania and Constantinople. He also established a principality in Egypt and gave three eighths of its territory to the Venetian merchant Patricians who were its principal beneficiaries. This, in my opinion, indicates that they were relatives and his financiers. Of this principality Pope Honorius III said that it was almost a New France.

In 1217 Yolanda (Hainault) became the Empress of Romania.

All these rulers favoured their merchant Patrician kinsmen because they understood that trade brought prosperity for the people, and therefore also the merchant Patricians' (Princes) female descendants were favoured by many rulers.

In those days the foreign queens were usually accompanied by a large number of relatives who expected gifts, favours and appointments which made them unpopular especially among the people who therefore had to pay higher taxes. The merchant princesses weren't usually accompanied by a large number of relatives, and therefore didn't burden the people.

On the contrary they brought prosperity to the land as was the case of Philippa Haineault (Haino). Philippa Haineault was the daughter of William the Good (Hainault) who was the Count of Hainaut and Holland. At the age of 13 she married her second cousin Edward III of England (Plantagenet). Here I want to mention that regardless that the Haino name was written in French as Hainaut, Hainault and Haineault they all were and are pronounced as in Latin Haino and refer to the same name. The discrepancy of the spelling comes from the fact that all "living" languages change during the centuries. In the biography of Philippa Haineault it is said that as she came to England, she didn't bring with her a large number of relatives expecting gifts, favours and appointments. She was known for her gentleness and compassion, and was very popular in England. She also accompanied her husband on his war expeditions. In 1347 A.D. Edward III prepared, after a long siege, to sack the French port of Calais, but when the city's "burghers" offered to be hanged if the king spared the city, history tells that Philippa was so moved by this gallantry, that she successfully pleaded her husband to spare the city and the "burghers", too.

I don't think that anyone can dispute her compassionate act. However, it is a well known fact that because of his constant wars Edward III was so deep in debt that he had to pawn his crown jewels. History tells that Philippa's merchant relatives, who were also relatives of the King Edward III, because he was a Plantagenet (Hainault – Haino), redeemed Edward's Crown Jewels and return them to him. Is it possible that this financial incident would have been a strong inducement to soften up Edward's heart?

Whether it had anything to do with Edward's behaviour doesn't by any means diminish Philippa's gentleness or her compassion.

As was pointed out Edward III was a member of the Plantagenet (Hainault) Dynasty who was constantly forced to fight against the "Normen", French and Flemish Dukes and Counts. In fact Edward III was forced to start the so called 100 Years War to protect his relatives' and England's trading interests. The "historians have tried to explain that the decline of Brugge (Bruges) was caused by the silting up of the Zwin, however, I believe that there were many other and stronger factors which were the main cause of the decline, because as the Zwin started to silt up, the merchants had created the outposts of Damme and Sluis for their trade with England.

One very big reason for the decline of Brugge, in my opinion, must have been the fact that the lucrative wool trade with England, which was one of the biggest commodities, had ceased because England had begun to manufacture its own clothes.

However, I believe that the biggest reason was the constant wars which were caused by the greed of neighbouring Dukes and Counts, who wanted to lay their hands on Brugge (Bruges) to be able to tax prosperous merchants.

During the Romans' time the principality was called Hannoniae, and had a Roman Consul who represented the Roman power and protected the "International" merchants against robbers. After Chlodwig (Clovis) of Merovingian family was able to defeat the last Roman ruler in Gallia with the help of Goths, Alemains, Burgundians, Nervii and other Germanic tribes, he formed the Kingdom of Franken (Frankreich), which today is called France. His descendant Charles II the Bald, King of France 843 A.D. - 877 A.D. changed the Hannoniae name to Hainaut, made it a county, and installed Baldwin I also known as the Iron Arm as a Count. Later as the Flemish Counts conquered the area they changed the name Hainaut, because in their language, it wasn't pronounced as Latin "Haino" and started to call it Hennegau.

Considering all this and the fact that the political situation in central Europe had changed the focal points of economical life considerably, the Hainault (Haino) merchant Patricians had to explore new possibilities for their trading activities.

CHAPTER XVI

At the time as Emperor Otto I the Great (936 A.D. – 973 A.D.) had changed the Empire's administration so that the Bishops replaced the Margraves and Counts as the representatives of the Empire, the Margraves and Counts lost their lucrative taxation rights, but the merchants started to gain more power because most Bishops came from merchants' families and therefore favoured their merchant kinsmen as was mentioned earlier.

This created many disputes between the merchants and the ruling classes who felt that it was their prerogative to levy taxes against the merchants whom they considered as commoners. Therefore in many cases frictions flared up into armed conflicts especially if there were rulers of several counties who all coveted the riches of the merchants' cities as was the case of Bruges in the County of Hainaut. We should not forget that times were lawless and brutal, the cruelties and atrocities which were common occurrences in those days would be today considered as war crimes. Therefore it is very difficult to have a clear picture of what had happened in the County of Hainaut and especially in the City of Bruges around the 12th – 14th centuries (A.D.).

In the case of Bruges the "historians", by covering up the Counts' greedy, murderous acts under the veil of righteousness, and by giving impression that the Counts were concerned of the craftsmen's (commoners) rights to participate as Aldermen on the city's council are justifying the atrocities committed against the peaceful merchants and the citizens, omitting completely the fact that the merchant Patricians owned the whole city which they had built and therefore were "Burghers" of Bruges which was their home.

By analyzing similar cases around the same time in the general area and written by various historians for different kind of readers, we may arrive at a fairly realistic conclusion.

I believe that after Count Charles the Good was murdered in 1127 and Bruges had been overrun by conquering armies those Hainaut (Haino) Patricians who survived the horrors, established the county and the city of Heino in Holland, of which the Bishops of Utrecht mentions in 1236 A.D.

At that time the County of Holland had gained more power than the rest of the Flemish counties and because its Count aspired to become the Emperor of the Holy Roman Empire, it was the safest place in the area for the Hainaut merchant Princes and their families. At the same time the Hainaut Patricians must have began to look for a safe place for headquarter of their commercial activities, especially as they had lost their ancestral lands in the Baltic Sea area to the Slavs.

Around the turn of the 11th century into 12th century (A.D.) the Germanic farmers, especially in Saxony, had started to use the IRON PLOW which revolutionized not only agriculture, but also the whole way of life. From then on people could stay in one place without needing to move in search of virgin forested land suitable for their "slash-and-burn" agriculture. By ploughing previously considered as "exhausted" fields they were able to rejuvenate the soil and turn the fields into productive agricultural land. They also were able to drain the swamps and marshlands and make them into fertile fields. All this caused the population to grow and tribes became nations which needed permanent habitation places. This population growth created the need of more land for the growing nations.

Therefore as Lothar the Duke of Saxony started to reclaim the ancient Germanic tribal lands in Pomerania which were sparsely populated by the Slavs, the Hainaut merchant Patricians, who had lost their ownership of Bruges, saw an opportunity to have a permanent trading post on the southern shores of the Baltic Sea, as they used to have in Rerik, before it was sacked by the Danes in early 9th century A.D. Especially as their trade with the Baltic Sea nations, Sweden, Finland, the Baltic nations (Liivs, Letts and Viro (Estonia) and "Russia" had increased considerably and the so-called North Way (Nord Weg) was very time consuming and cumbersome.

However, they retained Bergen for the Norwegian trade especially the salted fish, because the Baltic Sea herring had been depleted and the demand of salted fish had increased in Europe.

As Lothar the Duke (King) of Saxony reclaimed from the Slavs the area we know today as Mecklenburg and parts of Vorpommern, the great castle of Mikilinburg, in which the Prince of Slavs resided, was able to withstand Lothar's onslaught, but it was his son Pribislav, who finally made peace with Lothar's son Henry the Lion (Heinrich der Loewe), and surrendered the area to the Saxons. The name Mecklenburg was most likely derived from the said Mikilinburg castle.

For his annexation of the Germanic tribes' ancestral lands from the Slavs, Duke (King) Lothar needed great amounts of money which the Hainault merchant Patricians were ready to provide in return for the ownership of the land they had in mind for their new trading port on the Baltic Sea. However, because the land which they had in mind was the delta of the river Trave (Travemuende) was in Count Schauenburg's county they also had to satisfy him by financing his crusade to the Holy Land.

Here I want to remind that both, Duke Lothar and Count Schauenburg, were waging an expensive war against the Slavs in Vorpommern, and that the retreating Slavs burned the towns and villages which they surrendered to the Saxons, so that there wasn't much left for the conquering armies who according to the then custom, lived from the conquered land. On the other hand, the Hainault merchant Patricians had accumulated wealth in their trade with England, and therefore were able to provide the badly needed funds for Saxons.

There were also other factors which were beneficial for Duke Lothar's aspirations to reclaim the Germanic ancestral lands. In those days the indigenous eastern "heathen" tribes such as Liivs and Letts controlled already the ancient Germanic areas of Danzig (Gdansk) and Koenigsberg (Kaliningrad) and therefore the Greifen Dukes in Pomerania and Poland were concerned that they wouldn't be able to sustain their lands against these "heathen" tribes.

They agreed with Duke Lothar of Saxony that he would send Germanic farmers into the sparsely populated areas to protect them against the "heathens", under the agreement that he recognized the Greifen Dukes as Princes of the Holy Roman Empire and protectors of the said land areas.

The Pomeranians and Poles (polianians) were already Christianized into Roman Catholicism as were the Germans, and because they were all ruled by the Holy Roman Empire they welcomed the German farmers as friends and protectors. Especially as the Germanic farmers brought with them new agricultural methods unknown to the Pomeranians and Poles and began to cultivate previously uncultivated areas such as "exhausted fields", swamps and marshlands, and didn't aggressively push against locals to destroy their homes nor did they covet their fertile lands or their sea ports. Therefore today's malicious fabrications against the Germans in those are totally unfounded. They brought advanced technology and civilization and not destruction.

In fact, this new agricultural method, the "iron plough", pacified the whole Western Europe and was also beneficial to the merchants, because grain became a very important commodity which increased considerably their trading activities, and gave a completely new scope for merchants trading practises. Considering also that the so called "Viking Era" ended around the same time, I feel that we should give credit to the "iron plough" for pacifying the northern marauders.

In the meantime Duke Lothar's son Henry the Lion married Matilda, the daughter of Henry II King of England, Plantagenet, Hainault. Considering that all marriages in those days were arraigned by the parents and relatives, I wouldn't be surprised if the Hainault merchant Patricians, who also had ducal rank, had their influence in this marriage. In any event Lothar, Duke of Saxony, owed a great deal to the Hainault Patricians for financing his annexation efforts of the Germanic ancestral lands, and because Henry II the Plantagenet was a member of the Royal House of Hainault and Avenes, this marriage created family ties between the Duke of Saxony and the Hainault merchant Princes.

When Lothar the Duke of Saxony died, his son Henry the Lion (Heinrich der Loewe) became the Duke (King) of Saxony, and continued his father's efforts to redaim the Germanic ancestral lands which were occupied by the Slavs since 700 A.D.

Like his father, Henry the Lion, needed great sums of funds for his conquests, therefore he must have approached his wife's relatives, the Hainault (Haino) merchant Patricians, who had began to rebuild the settlement in Luebeck which was destroyed by the fire in 1157 A.D.

The Hainault Patricians must have agreed to help Henry the Lion, most likely on the condition, that he would grant them administration rights for the area which they had acquired in Travemuende.

Considering that the settlement in Luebeck had burned down in 1157, and the Hainault merchant Patricians obtained from Henry the Lion the administrative rights, which made Luebeck a City State in 1159 A.D. And at that time Luebeck couldn't have been a big city.

In 1163 A.D. the Hainault merchant Patricians caused Henry the Lion to sign a treaty, most likely against remunerations, whereby he bound himself to protect the mutual trade off the City of Luebeck and the City of Visby on the island of Gotland, against the Danish King Waldemar II (1131 A.D. - 1182 A.D.).

I believe that the case of Visby was somewhat similar to that of Stockholm where the Hainault Patricians owned half of the city and therefore installed half of the city's Aldermen. Why would they otherwise be so interested in the City of Visby on the island of Gotland to include it in the treaty?

This treaty caused the Germanic merchants to partly re-route their Baltic trade back to Visby. As Visby began to regain some of its previous prosperity, the trading route through North Way (Nord Weg) started to lose its importance, except for Bergen, which remained an important trading post for Norwegian trade.

In those days a town became a city state after the city's owners (usually merchants) had bought administration rights from the local ruler. In fact, that kind of city was its owners' home, a private estate, and around it the owners built a fortification, or a wall with gates to protect themselves and their employees against outsiders, who were usually robbers. Regardless that they were called city states, the owners owed their allegiance to the local rulers to whom they had to pay taxes. They also paid their employees' taxes, and therefore people who lived in their cities (Buergers) said that "city air is freedom". The city state was ruled by a council of Aldermen whom the owners installed.

Because this system brought prosperity to all city dwellers there were many wars and armed conflicts between the local rulers, who, in their greediness to collect taxes, tried to expand their land areas, and in that way, have more people from whom they could collect taxes.

The case of Pomerania was different. For millenniums the area was populated by Germanic people, but after the Huns devastated the area, the Slavs invaded it. And now as the Saxons needed more land to ease their burgeoning population growth, their Duke Lothar agreed with the Slavs to send Germanic farmers into Pomerania's unpopulated areas.

However, when Lothar died his son Henry the Lion (Heinrich der Loewe) became the ruler of Saxony, and being a young man he was more impatient than his father. His usurpations of the northern regions of the Holy Roman empire weren't appreciated by his cousin Emperor Frederick I Barbarossa, who wanted to have peace with the Pomeranians and Poles at the time when the heathen tribes from the east started to threaten again the Pomeranians along shores of the Baltic Sea, especially their ports in order to cut them off from the Baltic Sea.

Therefore as Frederick I Barbarossa's friend Herman Salza, a German priest, the 4th Commander of the Order of Teutonic Knights, who had been casting his eyes for a long time to another endeavour that would give his Order more land, which in those days was the wealth of the governments, appealed to his friend Frederick for his help to arrange a crusade into the eastern heathen areas to acquire coveted land.

The opportunity came as Polish Duke Conrad of Masovia approached the Pope with the request to have a crusade through the Emperor to save the heathen tribes by Christianizing them and in that way to pacify their eastern neighbours. This gave Frederick I Barbarossa the chance to curb Cousin Henry's ambitions. At that time Henry the Lion of Saxony was already threatening Stettin (Szczecin), which was already an important trading port at the delta of the river Oder, and therefore had a direct connection with the south-eastern parts of Germany.

The Pomeranians and the Poles were Christianized into Catholicism, and therefore they were a part of the Holy Roman Empire, as mentioned before, and because Cousin Henry's activities started to threaten also the peaceful co-existence of Poles and Germans creating disturbances within the Empire, Cousin Henry had to be stopped.

According to the history books; Frederick I Barbarossa stopped Cousin Henry's ambition by terminating his ownership of the City of Luebeck and at the same time granted Luebeck the status of a Free Imperial City State in 1181 which made Luebeck an independent City State which gave the city extensive privileges and power.

The status of a Free Imperial City State changed Luebeck's rank among other city states, and placed it into the prestigious rank of other four Free Imperial City States, namely Rome, Venice, Pisa and Florence who's Aldermen were called Senators because they were on the Emperor's council as his advisors. It also changed Luebeck's allegiance and its obligations to the local rulers, and now it only owned its allegiance to the Emperor, and paid taxes only to the Emperor himself. In fact, it became a kingdom in its own right and therefore its rulers, the Hainault merchant Patricians who had a ducal rank were officially recognized as equal to the King and Princes.

I believe that Frederick I Barbarossa as the Emperor of the Holy Roman Emperor had many other possibilities how to curb Cousin Henry's pesky activities than to elevate Luebeck into a Free Imperial City State, especially, if we compare the historical facts of Luebeck with the histories of other German cities.

CHAPTER XVII

The historical information about Luebeck according to the history books is as follows:

819 A.D. The first Slavic settlement established at the delta of River Trave.

1073 A.D. "Liubice" name was mentioned by historian Adam von Bremen.

1138 A.D. The old Luebeck's settlement was burned down by the retreating Slavs.

1143 A.D. Count Adolf Schauenburg established a merchants' colony on the peninsula between the Rivers Trave and Wakenitz.

1157 A.D. The settlement was destroyed by fire.

1159 A.D. The settlement was rebuilt by Henry the Lion.

1160 A.D. The bishopric of Oldenburg (Holstein) was moved to Luebeck.

1181 A.D. Emperor Frederick I Barbarossa terminates his cousin Henry the Lion's ownership of Luebeck, kept the city for himself and gave to it many privileges, among them the prestigious status of a Free Imperial City State.

1201 A.D. – 1206 A.D. Luebeck was occupied by Danish King Waldemar II.

1226 A.D. Emperor Frederick II, the grandson of Frederick I Barbarossa, chased the Danes out of Luebeck, and dedared in writing, that the Free Imperial City State of Luebeck belongs to the Emperor of The Holy Roman Empire forever.

1239 A.D. Luebeck's city wall was mentioned for the first time

Around 1300 A.D. Luebeck became the administration centre of "Die Hanse".

According to my understanding of the times and the "historians" statements, there are some discrepancies in the historical "facts" of Luebeck; therefore we have to analyze the historical information about Luebeck.

The historical accounts of Luebeck start as late as 819 A.D. when the Slavs invaded the traditionally Germanic area. As Slavs' chieftain saw the beauty of the area we know today as Luebeck, he fell in love with the area and named it "liubice or liubshe", which meant in their language lovely or lovable and decided to build a summer villa "dacha" on it. He also ordered homes to be built for his servants and caretakers, and that must have been the whole settlement, in other words, not even a hamlet.

As then Lothar the Duke of Saxony began to reclaim the Germanic ancestral lands from the Slavs, the retreating Slavs burned the area of "Luebeck" in 1138 A.D. It was the Slavs' tactic to burn everything as they retreated to make it difficult for the conquerors to survive.

In 1143 according to the history books Count Adolf von Schauenburg was the founder of the trading post at the peninsula between the delta of rivers Trave and Wakenitz, and called it Luebeck.

This according to my understanding sounds very peculiar;

In the first place:

Why would a Count in those days be interested in helping merchants whom he considered to be commoners?

Secondly:

A Count who was obligated to participate in the crusade needed all the funds he could get to assemble a fighting detachment to fulfill his obligations to the Pope, and to the Emperor of the Holy Roman Empire. In those days all rulers, Kings, Princes, Dukes, Counts, Barons and Priests needed great amounts of money to meet their obligations to the Church. To get the needed funds they didn't want to borrow money from the Jewish money lenders who charged high interest rates as mentioned earlier, therefore they turned to the merchants who were eager to buy land.

We also have to remember that Church prohibited Christians to lend money against interest, because the Church considered interest charges as usury.

Therefore the most logical explanation is that Count Schauenburg sold the land to the Hainault merchant Patricians, who then established the trading post of Luebeck on the land they owned. The fact that the land in question was within the said Count's county, doesn't necessarily mean, that he was the one who established the said trading post.

According to the historical accounts Luebeck burned down in a fire in 1157 A.D. and was rebuilt in 1159, and this time Duke Henry the Lion is credited with the rebuilding work.

However, considering that Henry the Lion, like all rulers in those days, constantly needed money. And I believe that he must have been more interested in expanding his Duchy, than in spending money on a risky venture to build an insignificant peninsula into a merchants' town. Therefore the information that Henry the Lion built Luebeck in 1159 A.D. doesn't sound to me very convincing. True, it was built during his time in his Duchy, but I don't believe that it was done by him, nor with his money.

I also found it very odd that after Luebeck was rebuilt in 1159, within one year, that is in 1160 A.D. the Holstein Bishopric was moved from Oldenburg to Luebeck. In those days, according to my understanding, a town couldn't have been built within one year. So, it couldn't have been more than a settlement or a hamlet at best. Neither did Duke Henry the Lion have the clout nor the power to resettle a bishopric, on the contrary, he had fallen into disfavour with the Pope who didn't appreciate Henry's constant incursions into the Catholic Slavs' lands, nor did Henry the Lion's cousin Emperor Frederick I Barbarossa agree with his usurpation of Pomeranians' and Poles' lands because it created disturbances within the Empire.

History tells us that in 1181 Emperor Frederick I Barbarossa became so dissatisfied with his cousin Henry the Lion's pesky activities that he took Luebeck away from him, and gave the city many privileges among them the status of a Free Imperial City State.

Doesn't it sound very odd that for this insignificant "town", the Emperor of the Holy Roman Empire Frederick I Barbarossa "granted" the prestigious status of a Free Imperial City State with all the "perks and trimmings"?

Already the fact that it was made a Bishopric in 1160 A.D. sounds to me very peculiar, because at that time it couldn't have been more than a hamlet, or a village with few houses. We have to remember that it burned down in 1157 A.D. and was rebuilt in 1159 A.D. one year prior of becoming a Bishopric.

I believe that the Emperor had many other ways how to stop his cousin of creating trouble in the Empire, and at that time Luebeck didn't even have a city wall for its protection against robbers and other intruders.

The city wall was mentioned the first time in 1239 A.D.

We also have to remember that at that time there were many other much older, bigger and more prosperous cities within the Holy Roman Empire to whom Frederick I Barbarossa didn't "grant" similar privileges, or prestigious status of a Free Imperial City State, of example:

COLOGNE (Koeln).

It is unknown when Cologne was founded, all we know, that its original name was Oppidum Ubiorum, and that it was founded by a Germanic tribe called Ubli. It is situated in West Germany on the river Rhine, and therefore had good connection both to the Alps and the North Sea. It must have been a very prosperous merchants' town because the Romans established there a garrison in the 1st century B.C. and surrounded it with a city wall. In 50 A.D. the Roman Emperor Claudius established there a colony and named it Colonia Claudia Ara Agrippiense after his wife Agrippina who was native of the town. Around 330 A.D. the Germanic tribe Franken took the town from the Romans, and in 785 A.D. it was elevated to the rank of Archiepiscopal See by Charlemagne (Charles the Great). Later in 1356 A.D. by Golden Bull the Archbishop of Cologne became one of the electors of the Holy Roman Empire, and became an important member of "Die Hanse".

FRANKFURT.

Frankfurt was also known as Frankfort and Frankfurt am Main to distinguish it from the other Frankfurt which is in the eastern part of Germany on the river Oder. Frankfurt am Main was a thriving merchants' town already before the Romans conquered the southern part of Western Europe south of the river Rhine. The river Main is a contributory river of the river Rhine flowing south from central Germany and therefore Frankfurt am Main had a central position to the central European trade. Being north of the river Rhine it wasn't conquered by the Romans, otherwise there would be some account of Roman occupation, therefore there aren't many documents concerning Frankfurt am Main as is the case regarding the City of Cologne.

In those days, in fear of robbers and Roman slave traders the merchants kept their trading routes and posts a trade secret, and therefore the first known reference to Frankfurt was made by Charlemagne in 798 A.D. who made the city one of his Royal residences. However, in the 12th century it was already famous for its trade fairs and Frederick I Barbarossa, whose election and coronation took place in Frankfurt in 1152 A.D. made the city the coronation place of German Kings for centuries.

(Frankfurt bought its Free Imperial City State Rights for 8.800 Gulden as late as 1372 A.D. from Emperor Charles IV).

BREMEN.

Bremen is situated near the point where the river Weser flows into the North Sea. According to the evidence of the “terp-buildings” (the distinctive raised settlements) the area was populated by Friesians as early as in 700 B.C. To the north their neighbours were the Angles and the Jutes (Danes), to the east were the Saxons to whom they were related, and to the south were the Germanic Belgae tribes including the then well known Nervii tribe. With all these tribes the Friesians had established good trading relations, especially the Nervii tribe, which was considered at that as the most prosperous and advanced Germanic tribe north of the river Rhine. The Friesians inhabited the whole coastal area of the North Sea, which the Romans called “Mare Frisicum”, all the way south to the area where the Belgae tribes lived. This area was later called Flanders, and was later conquered by the grandnephew of Julius Caesar, Emperor Augustus (27 B.C. – 14 A. D.). The Belgae people and Batavians were the ancestors of the Dutch, and comprised of several Celtic and few Germanic tribes, such as Morinii, Menapii, and the well known and highly advanced Nervii tribe. With these Celtic and Germanic tribes, the Friesians had also good trading relations with the Hainault (pronounced as Latin Haino) of the Nervii tribe who had good trading relations with the Italian merchant Patricians of Rome, Venice, Pisa and Florence, to whom they were related.

In the written history of Bremen it is stated that in 787 A.D. it became the Seat of a Bishopric, and in 965 A.D. it was “granted” market rights by Emperor Otto I the Great and the Archbishop Adeldag. In 1646 A.D. Bremen became a Free Imperial City State. How much Bremen had to pay for all these privileges is not mentioned in the written history, but considering that Frankfurt had to pay 8.800 Gulden (in gold) in 1372, Bremen must have paid a sizeable amount, considering the greedy rulers and the Church Prelates.

HAMBURG.

The first reference to the foundation of Hamburg is written by the historians as being the year 825 A.D. when the moated Castle Hammaburg was built between the rivers Alster and Elbe at the base of the Jutland peninsula (the land of Jutes).

The Elbe is one of the main rivers in central Europe flowing from the south eastern corner of Germany to the North Sea. Along the river Elbe lived several Germanic tribes, some of them were among the most populous, and most advanced of all European “barbarians”. Therefore to suggest that the Germanic tribes were a bunch of primitive brutes, as some “historians” would like us to believe, defies all archaeological evidence.

Considering the favourable geographical location of Hamburg, many Germanic tribes such as Vandals, Burgundians, Goths, Thuringers and Saxons had for centuries, before the Huns’ invasion, an easy access to the North Sea by the river Elbe. Around the point where the river Elbe flows into the North Sea lived Saxons, to the west were the Friesians, to the north were the Angles and the Jutes and to the east were the Goths, Franken, Burgundians and the Thuringers. All these tribes must have had good trading relations, because they were trading with the Romans as was pointed out before.

It was also mentioned earlier that for example the Bastarnai people who were related to Goths, lived on the eastern side of the Carpathian Mountains, and had the most advanced civilization in the then known world around the 2nd century B.C. Being less than 100 kilometres from Bremen, as the crow flies, the area where Hamburg is situated must have been populated by Angles and Saxons around the same time as Bremen was populated by their relatives the Friesians. Therefore there must have been trading activities, but due to the lawless and brutal times, the merchants didn’t advertise their activities, or their trading places.

A very good example was that Hammaburg (Hamburg) Castle was built around 825 A.D. and the Jutes (Danes) burned the building in 845 A.D. During the following few centuries it was rebuilt and destroyed some eight times, and merchants had to pay constantly heavy payments to the Jutes (Danes) as friendship money to be able to work and trade in peace.

In 1188 A.D. according to the historians, a group of merchants received permission to build a new town close to the old Hamburg which was confirmed in 1189 A.D. by the Emperor Frederick I Barbarossa who also granted Hamburg special privileges, such as special trading rights, toll exemptions and navigational privileges, but not a Free Imperial City State status. Why?

STETTIN (SZCZECIN).

According to the historians Stettin (Szczecin) was a settlement established in the mid 8th century at the delta of the river Oder on the shores of the Baltic Sea, and in the mid 9th century it was enclosed with a wooden and earth embankment, some sort of a city wall. However, for innumerable centuries before the Huns' invasion in the 4th century, the whole area, which we know today as Poland, Czech Republic, Slovenia and the eastern parts of Germany, were populated by Germanic tribes, such as Vandals, Franken, Burgundians and Goths whose merchants had been trading with other Germanic and Baltic Sea tribes in amber and other commodities as early as 14 A.D. as stated in many historical books.

The amber trade is a very good indicator of the Germanic tribes' vast trading activities. The Romans considered amber as a precious stone, and the Germanic merchants considered it also as being a stone because its German name is "Bernstein".

Considering that amber was obtainable from the south and south eastern shores of the Baltic Sea, and the surrounding swamps, the Germanic merchants must have had close trading relations with the Finnic merchants who lived in the area. Therefore it is safe to say that the Goth merchants, who gave the name to Gotland, must have had a permanent trading post at the delta of the river Oder where Stettin (Szczecin) is located. Especially as the river Oder starts from the south-eastern part of the Czech Republic and flows through Poland into the Baltic Sea. According to history books, Stettin and the northern part of Pomerania were occupied by Danes from 1184 A.D. – 1226 A.D.

ROSTOCK.

To further illustrate the insignificance of Luebeck at that time I want to mention the case of Rostock; In 1161 the Danish historian Saxo Germanicum mentions Rostock which was a Slavic stronghold, and was conquered by the Danish King Waldemar I in 1161 A.D. in his conquest for the possession of Stettin, which the Danes considered as a coveted prize. The Slavs had built a castle at Rostock and a settlement at the delta of the river Warnow for their protection against enemies. Rostock is about 80 kilometres (50 miles) east of Luebeck, so that King Waldemar I had to pass Luebeck to reach Rostock.

However, the historian doesn't say a word about Luebeck which had been made a Bishopric in 1160 A.D. and this, according to my understanding, means that the King Waldemar I and the historian considered Luebeck to be just another small insignificant "town" which didn't even have a city wall for its protection. (As mentioned before the city wall of Luebeck was built as late as 1239 A.D.).

All this clearly proves the surprising actions of Emperor Frederic I Barbarossa as he elevated Luebeck to the prestigious Free Imperial City State which has never been explained by any "historian".

A Free Imperial City State was a state in its own right regardless in which kingdom or duchy it was located.

It had all the rights of a Kingdom, or a Grand Duchy within the Holy Roman Empire. However, it differed from a kingdom or a duchy, because it wasn't ruled by a King or a Duke, but an assembly of Patricians called Senators who all had a hereditary ducal rank.

They were called Senators because they were on the Emperor's council as advisors. At the time Luebeck became a Free Imperial City State there were only four cities in the Holy Roman Empire which had the same status, namely Rome, Venice, Pisa and Florence, and Luebeck became the fifth Free Imperial City State. We also have to remember that the Senators who had ducal rank were equal to the Kings and Princes, and had the right "to be present where the Emperor was".

In those days an Emperor wouldn't have accepted any counsel from commoner or lower nobility, nor would he have associated with them. The times were completely different from our times.

CHAPTER XVIII

Many "historians" are suggesting that the main reason why Emperor Frederick I Barbarossa elevated Luebeck to the Free Imperial City State and took it away from his cousin Henry the Lion in 1181 was to stop his pesky activities against the Poles and Pomeranian.

I pointed out before that at the time Luebeck wasn't much of a town in comparison with many other central European cities. However, the Aldermen of those cities were mainly commoners, and a Free Imperial City State's Aldermen in those days had to have a ducal rank to qualify for the Emperor's Council. Frederick I Barbarossa couldn't elevate anyone into the ducal rank without antagonizing other Senators of the Holy Roman Empire whose support was vital for the Emperor. This, according to my understanding, clearly indicates that the Aldermen of Luebeck had a hereditary ducal rank and therefore became Senators, and that leads to the question:

Who were the owners of Luebeck?

By looking into the unadulterated history of the Germanic tribes, we have to agree, that they weren't as primitive, nor as cruel, or monstrous as some of the "historians" have projected them.

For example, many Roman Emperors, even before Christianity, were of Germanic stock.

Some of the "historians" have also tried to convince us that the Germanic tribes were totally incapable of commercial activities, and that the commercial life in Europe, especially among the Germanic tribes, started with the mercantile and Maritime Empire called Die Hanse or Hansa, which was composed of many merchants of the various nationalities.

The "historians" are completely "forgetting" that the entire central Europe all the way from the river Volga to the British Isles was populated by various Germanic tribes, and that the northern part of the Europe of the Ural Mountains to Scandinavia was populated by Finno Ugrian or Finnic tribes, who all had vast commercial activities.

There are even suggestions that there were several "Hansas" in Germany before the foundation of the Die Hanse.

However, the undistorted historical facts give us a completely different picture.

There was only one Hanse, founded and organized by the Germanic Heijno (Hainault-Haino) merchant Patricians according to their needs and their national identity.

Throughout innumerable centuries the Hainault (Haino) merchants had planned to create in central and Northern Europe a similar mercantile organization as the merchants of Rome, Venice, Pisa and Florence had created in Italy to which merchants they were related through marriages.

However, they knew that the Italian system wouldn't work among the central and northern European people because they all were too independent and individualistically minded. This was proved by the south German merchants as they tried to create merchant unions and leagues after the Italian example, as stated in the Cambridge Medieval History.

It was mentioned earlier that during the Roman occupation of the area we know today as France and Belgium, the Hainault (Haino) merchants traded with their Italian merchant Patrician relatives, and that they were known and respected as Patricians who had a ducal rank.

Then in 481 A.D. Clovis (Chlodwig) from the Merovingian family of the Germanic Franken tribe defeated the Romans in Gaul (Gallia) and established the Franken Kingdom (Frankreich), he reorganized the form of government, and the Hainault merchants lost most of their privileges. It took them about 400 years to have their ducal status recognized by the Holy Roman Empire.

As soon as the recognition was confirmed the Hainault (Haino) merchants founded in 862 A.D. a city in a remote area of Flanders in the County of Hainaut and named it Bruges, which became later a thriving merchants city, and the Hainault merchants were called there Patricians. They were also recognized in London, England, by "de institutis Londonie of Ethelred (978 A.D. - 1016 A.D.) as Homines Imperatoris etc.," as was earlier mentioned.

The Hainault (Haino) family was known as the Royal House of Hainault and Avenes, and used the family's insignia "the six-petal-rose", which had been in the family for innumerable centuries.

As long as the rulers of the Hainaut County where the City of Bruges was located, were members of the Hainault family the Hainault (Haino) merchants prospered. But after the murder of Count Charles the Good in 1127 A.D. their fortunes in Bruges diminished because the new rules of Flanders, and the County of Hainaut treated them as commoners or lesser nobility, because they worked for their living as merchants, and therefore they forced them to pay heavy contributions and taxes.

In the same year as Count Charles the Good was murdered, his relative Geoffrey (Geoffroi) IV the Fair, Duke of Normandy and Count of Anjou became the King of England as Henry II as he married Matilda (Maud the English Empress) daughter of Henry I of England.

Due to the constant animosities and envy of the fighting classes who fancied to call themselves "nobility" against the wealthy Hainault Patricians, who as merchants, didn't see anything noble in fighting, murdering and robbing innocent people.

I believe that for this reason Geoffrey who came from the said merchants' family, despised the cocky nobility, and therefore wore a broom corn on his person as a demonstration to tease and dare the snobbish "nobility", for which actions his companions gave him the Plantagenet name.

Therefore I also believe that it may have been originally the idea of King Henry II to have the six-petal-rose design to be engraved on the outer edge of the English Throne.

At about the same time Lothar, the Duke of Saxony, started to make gains in northern Germany around the Baltic Sea and Pomerania against the Slavic tribes. Then as his son Henry the Lion became the Duke of Saxony and married the daughter of Henry II, Plantagenet, King of England, the Hainault (Haino) Patricians saw their opportunity to have a more stable place in Saxony for their commercial headquarter in Europe, to replace Bruges in Flanders where the French, Flemish, "Normen" and English rulers were constantly fighting for supremacy to tax the wealthy merchants.

It is not known when exactly the Hainault (Haino) merchant Patricians got involved with the area we know today as Luebeck, because they never advertised their intentions or their activities, but as Henry the Lion married the daughter of Henry Plantagenet (Hainault) they definitely, in my opinion, must have been instrumental in the work of rebuilding the City of Luebeck.

We have to remember that in those days kingship was the most important factor in human relations, for example, marriages were arranged by the parents.

As Duke Lothar made gains in reclaiming the ancestral Germanic lands from the Slavs, and his son Duke Henry the Lion continued their advances into Pomerania, Waldemar I King of Danes (Jutes) wanted also to expand his kingdom. He had already conquered Rostock in 1181 A.D. with his eyes firmly set on Stettin (Szczecin), which at that time was a thriving merchants' city, and was considered by both Waldemar I and Henry the Lion as a coveted prize. At that time Emperor Frederick I Barbarossa was tied up in a bloody war against Pope Alexander III (1159 A.D. – 1181 A.D.) who had renewed his war against the German Emperor for the supremacy of secular power. Many battles were waged between the Pope's army and the army of Frederick I Barbarossa with horrid slaughters. Finally Pope Alexander III was driven from Rome in 1181 A.D. into exile where he died in the same year.

After the death of Pope Alexander III a relative peace followed between the Church and the Emperor during the tenure of Pope Lucius III (1181 A.D. – 1185 A.D.), Pope Urban III (1185 A.D. – 1187 A.D.) and Pope Gregory VIII (elected in 1187 A.D. and died the same year).

This gave Emperor Frederick I Barbarossa time to recuperate from the financial difficulties which the wars had caused him, and to attend to the troubles which Danish King Waldemar I and cousin Henry the Lion of Saxony had created in the north-eastern parts of his Empire against the Poles and Pomeranians who were also a part of the Holy Roman Empire.

To appease the Poles and Pomeranians Barbarossa accepted their Greifen Dukes as Princes of the Holy Roman Empire, and started preparations with his good friend, a young German priest by the name of Herman von Salza, who had just become the 4th Commander of the Teutonic Order as mentioned earlier, to organize a crusade against the heathen tribes of Livonia and Kurland, who were constantly harassing the Poles and Pomeranians.

For all these activities Emperor Frederick I Barbarossa needed a great deal of money and merchants support in the Senate which was composed of their relatives of the Italian merchant Patricians.

According to many "historians" Frederick I Barbarossa granted Luebeck the prestigious status of a Free Imperial City State in 1181, and in that way took away the city from his cousin Henry the Lion to curb his expansionist ambitions, however, that couldn't have satisfied Barbarossa's need for funds, or his need for Germanic merchants' support in the Senate. Therefore I strongly believe that Barbarossa sold the Hainault (Haino) Patricians the Free Imperial City State status to solve all his problems. This assumption is supported by the fact that about 200 years later Frankfurt paid 8.800 Golden Gulden (in gold) for its Free City status to Emperor Charles IV. Many Emperors sold Free City Statuses for financial reasons that way the city had to pay taxes only to the Emperor of the Holy Roman Empire. This created a great deal of friction between the Emperor and the Kings and Princes who were deprived of lucrative incomes, and especially the Electors, who had lost considerable income, started to undermine the Emperor's power, which weakened the Empire.

History doesn't tell whether any payment was made to Frederick I Barbarossa because neither party wanted to publicize possible transactions.

However, considering that Barbarossa needed money to stabilize his finances and to raise funds for the future Crusades against the heathen tribes in the north, especially, as the Teutonic Knights may not have been able to raise enough funds from among themselves. And in Luebeck's case it was the question of a City State status, whereby Luebeck would become a Duchy or a Kingdom in her own right, so we can safely assume that a considerable amount of funds must have changed hands. The fact that the title of the Aldermen in Luebeck changed to "Senators", and they were entitled to be on the Emperor's Council and that didn't antagonize other Senators, Kings or Princes, because the Luebeck's City Council was composed of Patricians who had hereditary ducal rank.

Considering all these facts one can come to the conclusion that the Hainault (Haino) merchants bought the peninsula between the rivers Trave and Wakenitz from Count Adolf von Schauenburg where the old settlement of Liubische used to be, and which was completely burned by the retreating Slavs, rebuilt the town, called it Luebeck, acquired the administration rights from Duke Henry the Lion, and installed their own kinsmen, the Patricians, as Aldermen. In other words Luebeck was a private enterprise or a company, therefore all Aldermen were their own Patrician kinsmen who all had hereditary ducal (Princely) rank. Even today, if you purchase a piece of land and establish a family business on it, you have the right to appoint your own family members into managerial positions, and nobody can force you to employ strangers as long as your company is a family business.

To ascertain that the Hainault (Haino) merchant Patricians had a hereditary ducal (Princely) rank, I want to quote an event which took place about 200 years later as Emperor Charles IV visited Luebeck on October 22nd 1375 A.D. It is said that "As Emperor Charles IV approached the Luebeck's city gates the owners of the city hesitated to open the gates for him because the Emperor came with such a multitude of guests that they had to be sure of his peaceful intentions. After they were fully convinced that there was nothing deceitful in his visit they gave him and the Empress a real royal reception. Eight young Patricians carried a baldachin of rich stuffs over the heads of the Imperial pair. (NOTE MY REMARK; "YOUNG PATRICIANS"). Emperor Charles IV was even being permitted to be at a meeting of the municipal council where Emperor addressed the Councillors as Lords". In those days only the Emperor, the Kings and Dukes were addressed as Lords.

This leads us to the fact that the entire European history speaks only about the merchant Patricians of Rome, Venice, Pisa, Florence and the Hainault merchants as being Patricians, regardless that there were many rich merchants even richer than some of the Patricians. This, in my opinion, is a clear indication that wealth wasn't the factor, or criterion of the Patrician status. However, the word "hereditary", is brought up on many occasions in connection with the merchant Patricians as was in the case of the "Yong Patricians" in Luebeck. Therefore the constant talk about the so called "New Patricians" is a fabrication of megalomaniacal fantasies, especially, as the ancestors of these "windbags" weren't even merchants during the Hanse Era.

According to my knowledge the last Hanse Diet was held in Luebeck in 1669 A.D.

Another proof that the merchant Patricians of Luebeck were the well-known Hainault (Haino) Patricians, was that their insignia was the six-petal –rose.

During the relatively peaceful period with Popes, Frederick I Barbarossa began preparations for a crusade against the heathen tribes in Livonia and Kurland to expand his Empire to the practically untapped north. However, this crusade had to be postponed for about 35 years, due to the fact that the Popes who came mainly from the Italian merchants' families, were more interested in organizing crusades into the Middle-East against the Mohammedans, to help their merchant families to reclaim the lucrative Middle-Eastern trade from Muslims, though the crusades were made under the pretence of liberation of the Holy Land from the infidels. This statement is supported by the historical information whereby Frederick I Barbarossa wanted to make peace with the Saracens to share Jerusalem with them, and have free passage for the Christian pilgrims to the Holy City.

In 1188 A.D. Pope Clement III (1187 A.D. – 1191 A.D.) was able to force Barbarossa to go on the Crusade to Jerusalem, for which he needed more money, this time Barbarossa approached Hamburg where part of the Hainault (Haino) merchant Patricians resided. And at this time he offered them in 1188 A.D. a charter, to build a new town with a harbour close to the old Hamburg between the rivers Alster and Elbe, and in 1189 A.D. he gave them a charter which gave them special trading rights, toll exemption and navigational privileges. History tells only that he gave these rights to "a group of merchants in Hamburg".

The fact that he didn't give Hamburg the same status as he gave to Luebeck, according to my understanding, was that among said group of merchants were also those who didn't have a ducal (Princely) rank, and therefore weren't qualified to participate in the Senate, therefore Frederick I Barbarossa had to "tailor" Hamburg's status accordingly, and give them Free City rights.

Most likely those merchants who were on Hamburg's City Council and didn't have the Patrician status must have been related to the Hainault Patricians through marriages. I also believe that the leading merchants of Hamburg were from the Hainault family, and therefore they were in close co-operation with their kinsmen in Luebeck, so that in 1241 A.D. they signed a treaty for mutual aid and protection especially as both cities had experienced constant harassment from the Danes.

In Hamburg's case there has not been any information whether any funds were paid, however, considering that Frederick I Barbarossa was making preparations for his Crusade to Jerusalem, it is only logical to assume that some kind of payment was made for all these rights. In 1190 A.D. Frederick I Barbarossa drowned in his heavy armour while crossing a river in the Middle-East.

CHAPTER XIX

It was mentioned in Chapter XVII that Stettin (Szczecin) and the northern part of Pomerania were occupied by Danish (Jutes) King Waldemar II from 1184 A.D. to 1226 A.D.

As long as Emperor Frederick I Barbarossa was alive Danish King Waldemar II didn't dare to attack Luebeck or Hamburg, because both cities were under the personal protection of the Emperor, but as Frederick I Barbarossa died on his Crusade to the Middle-East in 1190 A.D. the situation changed.

In 1201 A.D. Waldemar II attacked Luebeck, and occupied the city for about 25 years, until Emperor Frederick II chased him out of Luebeck in 1226 A.D. Danish King Waldemar II had also renewed his attacks against Hamburg, and constantly demanded great sums of "friendship" payments.

Emperor Frederick II (1215 A.D. - 1250 A.D.), who was the Emperor Frederick I Barbarossa's grandson, married the sister of Henry III King of England (Plantagenet – Hainault, Haino), and who chased Danish King Waldemar II from Luebeck, confirmed Luebeck's Free Imperial City State status in writing in 1226 A.D. This written document also declared that Luebeck was to be solely under the rule of the Emperor, and that the status was given to last forever.

This declaration enabled the Hainault (Haino) merchant Patricians to make plans for future activities as it gave them the full protection of the Holy Roman Empire against the local rulers.

From the history books we may read the following events:

"The City of Luebeck was liberated from Danes in 1226 A.D.

Frederick I Barbarossa's plan to send crusaders into Livonia and Kurland happened in 1226 A.D. as Crusaders (the first six knights), crossed the Wistula river.

The King Waldemar II was forced also out of Stettin (Szczecin)."

After the Teutonic Knights had secured the area, which we know today as Lithuania and Latvia, they gave exclusive trading rights to the Hainault (Haino) merchant Patricians of Luebeck, and guaranteed them safe trading routes. Similar guarantees were later given by Swedish Torgils Knutson in 1293 A.D. as was mentioned in the case of Viborg (Viipuri).

For some unexplainable reasons the Teutonic Knights didn't give the same rights to the south-eastern or to the south German merchants regardless that they had direct access to the Baltic Sea by the Wistula and Oder rivers.

Later in 1346 A.D. as the Danish King Waldemar IV Atterdag sold Viro (today known as Estonia) to the Germanic (Teutonic) Knights, and they also gave the same trading rights and the same guarantees of safe trading routes in Viro (Estonia) to the Hanse merchants in Luebeck.

We have to remember that the Germanic Knights weren't wealthy to start with therefore I doubt that they would have been able to come up with large sums to satisfy the greed of the Danish King Waldemar IV Atterdag. Therefore I strongly believe that all these transactions were financed by the Hainault (Haino) Patricians, in other words, they paid for every possible "privilege" and "exclusive rights".

After Luebeck was freed from the Danish yoke the Hainault (Haino) merchant Princes, the owners of the City of Luebeck, must have realized that the times had changed, and that they had to protect themselves, because there wasn't any guarantee that the next Emperor would be strong enough to protect them from their greedy neighbours. Therefore they decided to build a wall around their City, for their own and their peoples' protection against robbers and undesirable intruders. This wall was mentioned the first time in Luebeck's history in 1239 A.D. At the same time they must have also started negotiations with their relatives in Hamburg (which had also suffered many hardships) for a mutual treaty of aid and protection against piracy, and excessive customs, and discrimination by the greedy rulers. The treaty was signed by Luebeck and Hamburg in 1241 A.D.

This treaty wasn't too premature because in 1254 A.D. came the Interregnum, or the so called anarchy known as "terrible time without Emperor" (in German "Die Kaiserlose schreckliche Zeit"), which lasted until 1274 A.D. and left Germany in political ruins.

We have to look back to what had taken place in the central and the northern Europe for to understand, that how it was possible for the merchant Patricians to create a civic system and Legislate laws, many of which are enforced even today, such as the laws of the right weight and the right measure.

As the Margraves and Counts needed money they sold first the privileges to the merchants to pass through their lands and to trade with their subjects.

Then the merchants bought land from the Kings, Rulers and the Church Prelates. After which they bought the administration rights to manage their cities affairs without the interference of their overlords, and that made their Cities more independent. For every right and privilege the Patricians paid a fair price according to the then prevailing standards, and in many cases they had to pay even more because of the greediness of the rulers. We also have to remember that the Church prohibited Christians to charge interest on loans, and therefore the rulers were able to set the prices arbitrarily. Considering all this, in my opinion, claims of extortions, monopolies and blockades as stated by some "historians" do not sound very convincing. To claim something for which you have paid a high price, according to my understanding, is not extortion.

What concerns blockades, according to my information the merchant Patricians used them only to force their fellow merchants to abide by the Laws, and to force the rulers to stand by their written agreements which they, and their ancestors, had made with the merchants.

As the rulers sold privileges and lands to the merchant Patricians, and also relinquished against the remunerations, the rights to administer their towns independently, the merchant Patricians gave freedom to the city dwellers (Burgers) which they didn't have under the previous landlords.

Therefore many people wanted to become City dwellers, and so the merchant Patricians had to screen everyone, Gentiles and Jews alike whom they permitted into their cities.

In other words, the merchant Patricians owned their towns "lock stock and barrel".

They installed the Burgomeisters and the City Councils, built churches and hospitals for the people, and practised charity generously, in fact, they were the first ones who built hospitals for their people. They took good care of their citizens, which at that time was totally unknown, because the nobility considered the common people as non-persons. The merchant Patricians built also a city wall around their towns to protect themselves and their citizens, turning their cities into fortresses because of their previous experiences, they knew that as the time goes by and their citizens become prosperous, the rulers will become jealous, and will try to terminate their rights and privileges and rob them. This was also the reason why the Patricians decided to operate, in many cases, under the names of their Cities.

As the merchant Patricians grew in wealth and power they became known as the "King makers and King breakers". A very good example of this was when the Emperor Charles IV came to visit Luebeck in 1375 A.D. he called them "Lords", and regardless that the Patricians tried to disclaim such appellation, The Emperor insisted on it and repeated "You are Lords", and pointed out that Luebeck was the first Germanic City to obtain the prestigious status of a Free Imperial City State in 1226 A.D.

It has also been said that the merchant Patricians ruled their cities with a "hand of iron". Considering that even today, if you buy a property and turn it into productive commercial farms, or establish a thriving factory, or business on it, and build homes for your employees, you don't have to accept strangers to live in them. If some "squatters" occupy the homes, the authorities will help you to get rid of them. Is that considered an "iron hand" rule? According to my understanding nobody has the right to invade another person's home or property. However, merchant Patricians enforced their laws stringently also among themselves, therefore they had a strict family constitution, and because marriages were arranged by the parents, only "selected few" deemed to be acceptable into their families. If youngsters rebelled against their parents' decisions, the boys were sent to far away trading posts and the daughters were sent to a convent, after which they didn't have any future unless they came to their senses and abode by the family's rules.

We shouldn't forget that in those days the merchants who dared the uncharted bitter seas and unfriendly lands, had to be robust, fearless and well disciplined, men, who were ready and able to protect themselves and their wares against robbers, pirates and local rulers. And in many cases had to stay for months, especially in winter time, among hostile people who didn't have any goodwill towards strangers and who themselves were afraid and suspicious of all strangers.

Many of these merchants perished unknown to the world in their quest for new trading routes and trading possibilities especially in Scandinavia, Finland, the Baltic countries and "Russia". Their hardships were unimaginable for today's people.

Regardless of all these hardships those who survived always came back not because of greed, as is suggested by many modern "historians", but because they were born merchants, they were the real pioneers of the whole European commercial life.

The communications were almost non-existent. Nor were there any roads to speak of, therefore, for the fear of robbers, most of the transportation had to be done by the means of waterways which ran through hostile territories. Their small ships and barges were powered by oars and sails, and they seldom dared to go out of the sight of land, especially on the Baltic Sea, which was and still is very unpredictable and treacherous even for today's modern vessels. The times were completely different from our time. Strangers were shunned and even hated especially strangers with darker complexion for the fear of Arab slave traders.

We also have to consider that during the medieval time most people were illiterate and superstitious. The inquisition had started to prevent heresy, and then came the Interregnum which left the Holy Roman Empire in shambles and powerless as there wasn't an Emperor who would have defended individual kingdoms, duchies, counties, or cities.

Lawlessness was rampant, therefore all strangers were suspected to be trouble makers. It was a time “free for all” for every king, duke, margrave, baron and bishop who owned lands.

We have to remember that southern and western European histories have always been intertwined, first with the Roman Empire, and later with the Holy Roman Empire, and the Catholic Church.

The Northern and the Eastern Europe, especially Scandinavian countries, Finland, the Baltic and “Russia” which was, and still is predominantly Orthodox, were almost unknown to the Westerners, however, the Germanic merchants who were involved with the herein mentioned area’s trade, were fully aware of the potentiality of the area, but like all tradesmen and artisans who guarded jealously their crafts’ secrets and kept them within their own families, there the merchants also refined their trading practises, and their commercial rules and regulations, many of which were later incorporated into their Laws.

In these environments the Hainault (Haino) merchant Patricians of Luebeck, Hamburg and Visby, created in those days a unique civic and commercial organization, the so called “Die Hanse” or Hansa. As there weren’t any laws, rules or regulations for commercial activities, they established it on the principles of an empire with the exception that it wasn’t ruled by an Emperor, but by an assembly of Patricians who all had a hereditary ducal rank. This eliminated the constant political bickering and rivalry which they had witnessed during the centuries to weaken the Roman Empire, later known as the Holy Roman Empire. In fact, the Hanse was more like a private commercial enterprise than a league, therefore, I find the designation of a “league” somewhat misleading and deceiving. Especially, as operationally and administratively the Hanse functioned as a private business company. This commercial enterprise was originally established by the merchant Patricians to protect their Baltic trade against the Danes and other pirates, and later “Die Hanse” became a dominant factor in Central and Northern Europe.

The name “Hanse”, according to my information, originated from the Gothic language and signified a group of combatant men. In those days the merchants had to be always ready to defend themselves. They also replaced their identification of “red and white stripes” on the sails on their ships with their ancient, late 6th millennium B.C. emblem, the “double headed eagle”, as the “Normen” and pirates had started to use said red and white striped sails to mislead people to believe that they were peaceful merchants.

In historical books it is said that “The principal towns of Northern Germany, Luebeck, Hamburg and Visby on the island of Gotland were ruled in the early 13th century by Patrician families (Geschlechter) whose wealth was derived from an extensive trade in the Baltic area, with Sweden, Norway, Russia, Flanders and England”. (At that time Finland was an integral part of Sweden and was known as Eastland, because it was and is on the east side of the Gulf of Bothnia).

Considering that there have never been any other merchants in central Europe known as “Patricians”, we can safely deduce that the merchant Patricians of Luebeck, Hamburg and Visby were members of the same Hainault Dynasty which had grown during the centuries, if not millenniums, to a formidable force in the then known world. This claim is supported by the statement of “De Institutis Londonie of Ethelred 978 A.D. – 1016 A.D.” and the fact that the Hainault (Haino) merchants of Bruges (862 A.D.) in Flanders were referred to as Patricians.

The mutual trade of Luebeck and Visby was already protected against the Danes as Henry the Lion had signed the treaty in 1163 A.D. as was mentioned earlier, but in that treaty Hamburg was left out. Around the beginning of the 13th century the Danes became more aggressive and greedy, and the Holy Roman Empire was in shambles, and therefore it couldn’t protect Hamburg at that time against the Danes attacks. Now as the situation had changed the merchant Patricians of Luebeck and Hamburg signed a treaty of mutual aid and protection in 1241 A.D.

This, in my opinion, should be considered as the founding time of the Hainault (Haino) merchant Patricians Dynasty's commercial enterprise called "Die Hanse" also known as Hansa, because it encompassed also Visby. As then other Hainault merchant Patricians of other trading posts such as London, Bergen, Vesteras and Olhava (Novgorod) joined their relatives and formed a nucleus of the said commercial enterprise, the Patricians established in Luebeck their head office around 1300 A.D. We have to remember that the wealth of an individual merchant didn't make him a Patrician, therefore if he didn't belong to the Hainault (Haino) Patrician Dynasty who had a ducal rank, he was considered by the nobility as a commoner, and as such didn't have anything to say among the nobility. He was not accepted as an equal, or to sit at the same negotiation table with the nobility unless he was sent by the Patricians as an Ambassador. Though the Ambassadors were merchants of the First Guild, and were in many cases very rich themselves, though they didn't have any decision making powers, and therefore "many rulers abroad found it virtually impossible to pin them down to any precise commitments while they were awed by the almost limitless resources of the Hanse", as stated by many historians. To ascertain the kinship of the First Guild merchants to the Hainault (Haino) Patrician Dynasty we have to remember that the Hainault Patricians used six-petal-flower design to identify themselves to each other, and to distinguish them from the other First Guild merchants. The six-petal-flower design, especially the six-petal-rose (The Hanse Rose) was well-known among the nobility and all merchants. It was used by the merchant Patricians of London, Flanders, Bergen, Hamburg, Luebeck, Visby, Vesteras and Olhava (Novgorod). The iron door which was decorated with the Hanse Rose which was found in the tunnel leading to the Castle of Viborg (Viipuri), in my opinion, is a very good example of the use of said rose design as was mentioned earlier.

We also have to remember that in those days in Europe, the upper classes spoke Latin and French. For example, the English Parliament was opened in English language for the first time in 1363, and before that it was always opened in Latin or French, as mentioned earlier. However, the merchant Patricians had to know also the languages of the local people in various countries with whom they had trading relations.

Considering all facts, in my opinion, the strength and power of "Die Hanse" wasn't derived from its almost limitless resources, though it was undisputed in north-western Germany, the North Sea area, Scandinavia, Finland and the Baltic countries all the way to Olhava (Novgorod), it also had connections with Moscow. But from the fact that it was established and ruled by merchant Patricians who were all members of the same Hainault (Haino) Dynasty and who all had an ancient hereditary ducal rank. This gave them a family unity, an unsurpassable advantage over the rest of the merchants, which was essential especially in those turbulent times.

We should not forget that during and after the Interregnum Europe fell into 300 Principalities and City States, where the rulers arbitrarily set their own laws, rules and regulations, which had a devastating affect on the merchants' activities.

At that time "Die Hanse" wasn't the first attempt to create a united front of merchants to protect themselves against lawlessness, neither were the creators of "Die Hanse", as individual merchants, the richest merchants in Europe.

In the early 13th century the Holy Roman Empire began to crumble because the local territorial rulers and bishops preferred to have a weak Emperor, to be able to wield more power and grab more land and riches for themselves. This increased lawlessness in the Empire, and therefore the merchants in central Europe started to band together under the names of their cities to form leagues for their protection. In Germany, according to my information, the first league was formed by a number of Rhine towns in 1226 A.D. but this attempt and several other attempts were crushed by Emperor Frederick II, because he had seen in Lombardy how much power such combinations could exercise.

However, in the last years of his reign he permitted the formations of such town combinations, because the towns became the Hohenstaufen's strongest supporters. So that in 1241 A.D. Luebeck and Hamburg were able to sign the treaty of mutual aid and support, which was the "foundation stone" of "Die Hanse".

In history books you may read about several such attempts which were made by south-eastern and south German rich merchants, to have a merchants' united front, or league under their towns' names. However, due to internal jealousies none of them lasted very long. A good example was the confederation of the Rhine towns formed on July 13, 1254 A.D. Among the founding members were the well-known and rich merchants of Cologne, Worms, Mayence, Spire, Strasbourg and Basle. This confederation finally embraced over seventy towns in south Germany, because it differed from the earlier leagues by having the local territorial nobility and bishops as members.

In February 1255 A.D. even the King William of Holland identifies himself with the Rhine League, and became the head of it. Regardless of the inclusion of local nobility, or maybe because of the inclusion of them, there sprang up great difficulties between the merchants and the nobility who considered the merchants as commoners, and looked down upon them regardless of how rich they were. The culmination of this antagonism came as the Count of Leiningen seized the deputies of Worms and Mayence on their way to a league meeting at Strasbourg and threw them into prison. Though this dispute was later allayed, the friction continued, but due to the premature death of King William of Holland, said league lost its main supporter and was thrown back into confusion.

Similar difficulties originally didn't plague "Die Hanse" for several reasons, and therefore it survived for many centuries.

According to my understanding, the main reasons for its survival were:

"Die Hanse" was founded by merchant Patricians who were members of the same Dynasty, all of whom had a ducal rank, and therefore didn't need to involve other nobility, who didn't care, nor understand merchants' trade, and as pointed out, looked down upon them.

"Die Hanse" was originally organized as a commercial family empire and not as a league where every member was looking only for his own interests.

We also have to remember that in those days the family ties were very strong, and therefore the original members worked for their family's cause.

Later, as they accepted non-family members into their family's commercial enterprise came the same jealousies which had plagued the merchants' leagues, regardless that non-family members had joined "Die Hanse" to have protection against robbers, pirates and greedy rulers.

Human nature cannot be changed, as soon as danger has been averted, arrogance takes place, and often people forget their benefactors.

CHAPTER XX

In the previous chapter it was mentioned that in 1241 A.D. Luebeck and Hamburg signed a treaty of mutual aid and protection and that the Hainault (Haino) merchant Patricians, also known as merchant Princes of London, Flanders, Bergen, Hamburg, Visby, Vesteras, Olhava (Novgorod) and Luebeck decided around 1300 A.D. to establish a head office, or governing centre in Luebeck for the newly founded commercial enterprise (Empire) called "Die Hanse".

Luebeck was chosen for this responsible duty because at that time it was the sole Germanic City which had the prestigious Free Imperial City State status beside the Italian City States of Rome, Venice, Pisa and Florence, and was respected and recognized by most western and northern European rulers and nobility.

I also want to remind the readers that people lived in a class society as they had lived for millenniums and that in those days most people were illiterate. Therefore all stations in life, trades and skills included, were inherited and taught at home by parents. Later tutoring was done either by parents or by private tutors.

We also have to consider that in the year 1000 A.D. it is estimated that human population on the whole earth had been around 300 million and reached one billion (in American calculation) around 1806 A.D. so that with today's 6 billion (American calculation) plus, there is no comparison in any walk of life. Therefore most of the stories of the modern time "historians" regarding the Hanse Patricians have to be taken "with a pinch of salt".

For example, many of these modern time "historians" who have been either of pure ignorance, or of malicious intentions, by applying our modern time business ethics and legal understandings to the times gone by, and have accused the Hanse Patricians of monopolization and protectionism, and completely disregarding the lawlessness of said times, and the fact that in those days the word "monopoly" didn't even exist.

Regarding the protectionism, we should not forget that in those days the rulers decided who had the right to pass through their lands and trade with their subjects, therefore the merchants couldn't decide any of those things, and therefore the accusations of protectionism are malicious fabrications.

We also have to remember that many rulers favoured the Hainault (Haino) merchant Patricians because wherever they established their trading posts and trading routes, they always brought with them many artisans and craftsmen who taught the local people many skills. The merchants established also Germanic quarters, built churches and brought prosperity which benefitted also the rulers and local inhabitants, who started to imitate the new ways of life, and therefore began slowly to reject their cruel gods which demanded human sacrifices, In other words, Christianity pacified the population and brought civilization and literacy to the people.

Considering all the hardships and facts, there weren't many people who would have dared to embark on the gruelling profession of a merchant. A man had to be born a merchant and a member of a merchant family where he would have received his tutoring and training. An outsider wouldn't have survived in those cruel times, and therefore all accusations of monopoly and protectionism clearly prove total ignorance of the said "historians".

There are many books about the Hanse and the Hainault (Haino) merchant Patricians, but regretfully too many of them are preoccupied with the "stories" and "accounts" of the Germanic merchant Patricians' alleged greed and wrong doings. By using our modern day ethics and laws of business activities, these writers give an impression that they have been more interested in besmirching the courageous men who sacrificed so much to make the world a better place to live for all of us, than to give the just honour due to the Germanic merchants. They do not deserve to be belittled by every "cotton picking Tom, Dick and Harry" of which Thomas Mann is a very good example, because even his own uncle declared publicly in Luebeck's news paper that "he is a bird which soils his own nest".

Very good examples are also the books of some of the so-called "historians" where they explain how Hanse merchants showed off their jewels and wealth.

These accusations sound to me ridiculous because considering that the merchant Patrician families who established the commercial enterprise, or Empire called “Die Hanse” had been wealthy for millenniums, it is hard to believe that they had need to show off to anyone, especially, as in those days it was even dangerous to show your wealth. Therefore the merchants hid their valuables in piles of manure, as was pointed out earlier.

Here I want to emphasize that hidden treasures have been found in manure piles mainly in areas where the Germanic merchants had established their trading posts, and that would have been impossible for the robbers and pirates to acquire large piles of manure without being noticed.

In support of these arguments I would like to point out that in most cases the Hanse Patricians wanted to remain anonymous due to the harsh and cruel treatments they had suffered during innumerable centuries by the fighting classes and greedy rulers.

We only have to remember what happened in Bruges. That was also the reason why they used Ambassadors who were merchants of the First Guild. As is today, the rules, Presidents and Prime Ministers use high government officials and experts to prepare international agreements with the exception that the Hanse Patricians, for security reasons, didn't sign the documents and therefore their names aren't mentioned in the documents.

It is the well known fact that the upper classes in Europe spoke either Latin or French, and that they didn't bother to learn the language of the people whom they considered commoners. Therefore there wasn't any real communication between the upper classes and the local population. However, because the merchant Patricians or merchant Princes, who were in constant trading relations with the people, and especially with the local merchants, had to be able to trade and communicate with them and therefore were multilingual.

As Luebeck was designated as the head office, or governing centre of “Die Hanse” many of the most experienced senior Hainault (Haino) Patricians moved to Luebeck, and therefore Luebeck became also politically very important and influential factor in Europe. Until then the Hainault merchant Patricians of various trading posts acted independently and kept their trading practises, such as bartering and trading places and routes as family secrets, they hadn't made maps or sea charts in fear of robbers and pirates, neither had they kept records or written documents for the same reason, because there wasn't any guarantee of their safety. Therefore also everything had to be learned at home and by participating with their fathers on their trading missions. Now all this had changed as “Die Hanse” began to gain power to protect them.

We also have to remember that at that time the entire Europe was in political turmoil. Every local ruler tried to accumulate more power for himself, and therefore wasn't interested in having a central government with a strong Emperor, which led to total lawlessness, and in many cases to anarchy.

The Hainault (Haino) merchant Princes had also seen the futile attempt of other merchants to form unions and leagues for their protection against lawlessness and ruthless rulers. Said attempts succumbed under jealousies of their fellow merchants and the greediness of the local rulers, because there weren't any family ties between the merchants and the rulers, and therefore the local rulers treated the merchants as all other commoners whom they considered as non-persons.

We also have to take into consideration that the ancestors of the Hainault (Haino) merchant Patricians had gone through many difficulties during innumerable centuries if not millenniums. The last such destruction of their commercial activities they had experienced in Flanders, especially in their City of Bruges.

Therefore considering all pertinent facts, I believe that the Hainault (Haino) merchant Patricians or merchant Princes understood that whatever unity they created it couldn't be a league where every member was able to act for his own benefit, but that every Law, rule and regulation had to benefit all members, and especially the whole organization which was their livelihood.

The advantage which the Hainault merchant Patricians had over all other merchants was that the original founders of "Die Hanse" were members of the same Dynasty, who had an ancient ducal rank and who didn't recognize the much younger "firstborn's" inheritance right, which right caused the slide into one-man's rule, and was the ground for the feudal system as was the case in Italy.

The fact that they all had a ducal rank led to strong family ties and benefitted the Hainault (Haino) merchant Patricians, therefore "everyone outside of the tight circle of the Patricians was jealous of their power", as you may read from historical books which also state, that "many German cities were able to keep the feudal nobility outside of their cities' walls".

This in my opinion clearly indicates that the merchant Patricians of the said cities ranked, on the nobility class scale, higher than the local rulers, and therefore were able to keep the local rulers outside of their cities. Though originally "Die Hanse" was established for the protection of the trading activities of merchants as is clearly indicated in the treaty between Hamburg and Luebeck, but because of the total lawlessness, it was extended to encompass first the towns which were owned and ruled by the Hainault Patricians. Later, as other central, south and north European towns joined it "Die Hanse" became the ruler of all commercial activities in the said areas this led to the fact that "Die Hanse" became a very strong political power. However, this was also the downfall of its supremacy, as other merchants who weren't members of the Hainault family, started to feel secure, they began to demand more power in the private enterprise, or business, and "forgot" that the Patricians had given them protection.

This led to the fact that they started to compete against their benefactors, and in this they were supported by the rulers who wanted to benefit from the commercial activities as will be explained in the following chapters.

It has been mentioned on several occasions that in those days there weren't any laws, rules or regulations regarding commercial activities therefore the tasks of the merchant Patricians in Luebeck's head office were enormous. This has been completely ignored and disregarded by the "modern historians".

Considering that the Hainault Patricians didn't have the power to legislate any international commercial laws, and that the rulers weren't interested in anything which concerned "manual work", which they classified as commoners' activities. The merchant Patricians had to set the rules and regulations to establish order, unity, honesty and probity among their own members, and other "free wheeling" merchants with whom they had trading (business) relations.

All these rules and regulations were set to protect the merchants and to regulate the trading activities, and as the merchant Patricians didn't have the power to enforce these rules and regulations except by embargo and expulsion from the membership, this didn't affect the public in general as did the Magna Carta in England. Therefore they weren't written down but delegated by the word of mouth as the Laws of Luebeck. Later many of the said rules and regulations were also adopted by the rulers and became laws which were written down and incorporated into basic codes of jurisprudence around the world. However at that time the most important rules were the rules of right weight and right measure, because some of the merchants tried to cheat especially in the salt fish trade.

The fish was salted in wooden barrels and to save on fish, some of the merchants filled the barrels with saltwater, but that was found out by the weight of the barrels. This created a new craft, which the stevedores, who were the ship owners' employees, had to hire and train as assessors (controllers). In those days only the merchants owned cargo ships, but because the stevedores were responsible for safe and balanced loading of the ships, their names were mentioned in connection with the merchants' ships. In many cases the stevedores had to answer for a sloppy loading with their lives especially if there were losses of lives because of the unbalanced loading. We have to remember that people took pride in well done work, therefore many stevedores started to call ships which they had loaded and prepared for a journey as "their ships", regardless that they didn't own them, but meaning that they had prepared them for a voyage and in that way took the responsibility for a well done job.

It was a well known fact that the rulers owned battle ships. The merchants owned the cargo ships, and the fishermen had their boats or ships, and of course the pirates who had stolen them, but usually ordinary people didn't have the means to own ships. And what could have they done with them in the Baltic Sea where Danish Navy was a constant threat?

The merchant Patricians had also to be prepared to defend their members against robbers, pirates and greedy rulers. Principally the merchant Patricians were against any kind of violence, and were forced only on a very few occasions to retaliate. The best known cases where the Patricians were forced into armed conflicts were the war against Danish (Jutes) King Waldemar IV Atterdag in 1370 A.D. and an armed punishment against a pirate called Klaus Stoertebeker in 1402 A.D.

There are many stories about the war against King Waldemar IV Atterdag which include the sacking of the City of Visby on the island of Gotland in 1361 A.D. and ended with peace treaty of Stralsund in 1370 A.D. By reading many stories, legends, and historical accounts I have come to the following conclusion;

Around the mid 14th century Danish King Waldemar IV Atterdag realized that the Germanic Knights who had already occupied and Christianized the people of Kurland and Latvia, would soon be able to push him out of Viro (today known as Estonia) where the Danes had built a fortress called Reval (Tallinn), and decided to sell Viro (Estonia) to the Germanic Knights in 1346 A.D. As soon as the Germanic Knights had occupied Viro (Estonia) they granted the Hainault (Haino) merchant Patrician of Luebeck sole trading rights in Viro, as they had done in the cases of Stettin (Szczecin), Danzig (Gdansk), Liivs (Lithuania) and Latts (Latvia). They also guaranteed safe routes all the way to the river Neva which leads to the Lake Ladoga and from there to Olhava (Novgorod).

That way the Luebeck's Patricians were protected on the eastern shores of the Baltic Sea and the southern shores of the Gulf of Finland by the Germanic Knights. On the northern shores of the Gulf of Finland and the northern parts of the Baltic Sea they were protected by Sweden which they practically owned and had the City of Vesteras as their governing city in Sweden before Stockholm became the capital city of Sweden. The southern part of Sweden, the so called Schone was a constant battlefield between the Danes (Jutes) and the Goths. The Goths even built a fortress known as Gothenburg (Goeteborg).

I believe that King Waldemar IV Atterdag suspected that the Hainault (Haino) merchant Patricians had financed the purchase of Viro (Estonia) and therefore were "granted" sole trading rights by the Germanic Knights, and decided to collect an additional payment by sacking the City of Visby in 1361 A.D. which he knew was ruled by the Hainault Patricians. This infuriated the Hainault Patricians, and because they had a long standing guarantee given by Henry the Lion of Saxony, they sacked Copenhagen and forced Waldemar IV into a humiliating treaty of Stralsund in 1370 A.D.

The case of the Pirate Stoertebeker was in my opinion, more or less straight forward “police” work. Stoertebeker was born to a noble family and knighted for bravery, but turned into a pirate and was stripped of his title. He infuriated the merchants Patricians by bold lootings of their ships, therefore the Patricians assembled a small armada and captured him and his fleet together with his 70 pirates, and all of them were hanged in Hamburg 1402 A.D.

These cases proved to other merchants that “Die Hanse” was fully capable of protecting its members. Later, because of these two cases and the following constant harassments by the Danes which created disturbances to all traders in the Baltic Sea areas, the merchant Patricians were forced to organize a powerful Navy and for to keep it separate and apart from their trading activities they formed a Naval Base in the principality of Holstein, which they owned and ruled as a separate entity.

While setting completely new and revolutionary rules for the whole “industry” the leaders of the commercial and Maritime Empire called “Die Hanse”, who were the pioneers of international trade, had to organize the ways and means as to how to enforce said rules, and at the same time how to protect their members against robbers, pirates and greedy local rulers. The merchant Patricians strongest options to punish those who disobeyed their rules and regulations were suspension and expulsion from the membership, and embargo against the cities of the offenders. Therefore the merchants’ ship displayed the emblems of the cities they had the right to enter, and the offenders of said rules had to return the emblem of the City where the offence was committed. Any ship which couldn’t display the emblem of the City it intended to visit as a port-of-call, was considered as an un-welcomed enemy or a pirate, and was given the kind of welcome it deserved. Later, as was mentioned earlier, as the merchants felt secure, many of them “forgot” their promises and written agreements and turned against the merchant Patricians.

The merchant Patricians of Luebeck also minted their own currency which became the most reliable legal tender of its time, because of its high silver content. This legal tender was dubbed in England as “easterling” and was finally called “sterling”. That’s where the name “sterling silver” came into the English language.

At the same time the merchant Patricians had to establish a permanent governing system, to re-organize their Baltic trade, to start to build a local channel between the Baltic Sea and the river Elbe to give Hamburg a protected access to the Baltic Sea. The channel was the first lock channel in Germany, and was completed in 1397 A.D. They also had to accommodate the Italian merchant Patricians of Venice to whom they were related through marriages. Especially the Patricians of Venice where they had a depot called Fondaco dei Tedeschi for the Middle and the Far East wares, and the Florentine Di Medici who had an office and depot in Bruges. There were also many other tasks to look after which are recorded in the annals of Luebeck.

In the wake of all this administrative work we have to remember that the merchant Patricians had to take care also of the entire Fenno-Scandia, that is Norway, Sweden and the area we know today as Finland, which at that time was considered as an integral part of Sweden, and was known as Eastland, because it is on the east side of the Gulf of Bothnia. This entire vast area was sparsely populated and therefore not yet divided into counties or duchies. In fact most of the land wasn’t owned by anyone. People could just start their own homesteads wherever they felt that they were able to make a living and claim the land for themselves. This made every man and woman very independent and free, even their leaders were elected by free men and therefore nobody was superior over another person.

A very good example of this was the Norwegian chieftain by the name of Rolf whom the French called Rollo the “Norman”. As “Charles the Simple” (Charlemagne), in Scandinavian languages “enfaldige”, which could also be translated as “stupid”, asked Rollo around 911 A.D. “Who is your superior?” Rollo replied that “I don’t have a superior”. This was considered by the French as arrogance, because they didn’t know the social structure of the “Normen”, nor did they know that in Fenno-Scandia all social issues and disputes were decided by free men in especially called sessions, where also the leaders were elected, even Kings. For this purpose, according to the ancient custom, stones were placed in a circle on which the free men sat, proving that they were all equal. These stone settings are still found in Fenno -Scandia. Therefore, for Rollo it was only natural to say “I don’t have a superior”.

In reality the electoral Kingship gave every man the feeling of a total freedom; however, it also created confusion. As the descendants of various elected Kings felt that they should be the inheritors and rulers, and because in many cases the newly elected leaders broke the previous leaders’ agreements especially with the merchants from whom they wanted additional benefit, the whole system became very shaky. A very characteristic fact to this was that regardless that Eastland (Finland) belonged to Sweden, the Duke of “Novgorod” collected taxes from the said area. The hereditary succession of a King was introduced in Fenno – Scandia sometime in the beginning of the 16th century by Gustavus Wasa with the assistance of the Hanse Patricians who wanted to have more stability in the land. Gustavus Wasa introduced also the division of the land into counties, townships and local regions to curb the incursions of the Novgorod’s rulers who were constantly trying to grab the whole “Eastland” for themselves, until then there were only the so called fortress regions.

It was mentioned earlier that in Europe the upper classes spoke either Latin or French and used the Roman alphabet, however the Germanic people who spoke their own language and dialects used the Gothic alphabet, and weren’t familiar with the Roman alphabet because they were educated by the clergy, which in their areas used Gothic script. Therefore as long as the members of “Die Hanse” were members of the same Hainault (Haino) family, or clan, they didn’t have any language problems. But as other First Guild merchants wanted to join “Die Hanse” to have its protection against robbers, pirates and greedy local rulers, the language problem became a very important issue. To be able to communicate with the other merchants the Hainault (Haino) Patricians were forced to write their communications in German and other languages using Gothic script.

Here I want to point out that though the name Hainault was pronounced in French as Latin Haino, in other languages it wasn’t pronounced the same way but as something completely different. Therefore as the Hainault (Haino) Patricians founded a county in Holland they named it as Heino, and because the people in Holland were familiar with the Roman alphabet they pronounced it as Latin Haino. We have to remember that in German and Dutch languages a combination of “ei” in the Roman and in the Gothic alphabets “ey” (the letter “y” had an umlaut and signified Gothic “yot”) are pronounced as Latin “ai”, for example, the Germanic numerals “ein, zwei, drei”.

At the same time the Dutch began to call Hainaut County as Hennegauen, this name was later adopted by the Saxons as Hennegau. During the Roman time the said county was called Hannoniae.

I believe that the Hainault (Haino) merchant Patricians who had settled permanently in Luebeck to rule “Die Hanse” started to write their name in Gothic script as Heyno (y with umlaut) to obtain the same “Haino” pronunciation. Later, as the western world (“Russia” and a few other Slavic countries excluded) adopted the Roman alphabet, the Gothic “yot” y with an umlaut became “ij”. This form is preserved only by the Dutch. In English language the umlaut, from the Gothic yot, was discarded and “Y” is used in such words as yellow, yes, you, young etc. In some languages “y” is used as German “u umlaut”, for example in Swedish “lycka”, means luck.

The fact that the Hainault (Haino) merchants were members of the same family of the Germanic Nervii tribe which was highly advanced before our Christian era (B.C.E.) is demonstrated by the six-petal flower which is visible on many buildings throughout the entire Europe, Britain and Fenno-Scandia.

CHAPTER XXI

Before we go into details of the Germanic – Fenno-Scandia – Baltic and “Russia’s” trade relations, we have to clarify the structural part of the mercantile and Maritime Empire’s Government which was called “Die Hanse”.

The Head-Office or the government of “Die Hanse” was in the Free Imperial City State of Luebeck. It was separate and apart from the Luebeck’s trading “Kontor” and was concerned only for the well-being of the whole Empire, just like any other empire’s government where the local matters were taken care by the lower levels of government.

In other empires they had an Emperor and his Council to rule the kingdoms and duchies, who in turn had “margraveships”, counties’ and cities’ governments within their borders to rule and keep peace on the local levels.

“Die Hanse” which was a mercantile and maritime Empire or a private enterprise without borders, unique in those days, was ruled by a group of merchant patricians who all were members of the same Heijno (Hainault – Haino) Dynasty and who all had an ancient hereditary ducal rank.

They ruled their enterprise which they had created together with their main trading posts, because these trading posts were ruled by their own Dynasty’s members they were able to turn them into Branch Offices, and called them “Kontors” instead of kingdoms or duchies. Each of these Kontors had several trading posts, depots and even bartering places to supply the Kontor with commodities which were needed and valued elsewhere in Europe. Though the Kontors operated as individual private enterprises they all worked under the auspices of “Die Hanse”, and because the leading merchants of these Kontors or Branch Offices were related to each other there was no need for competition. They had enough headaches with the manipulations and greed of the local rulers, especially the ambitions of the Danish (Jutes) Queen Margarete.

At the time the Hainault (Haino) merchant Patricians were forced to reroute their Baltic Sea trade through Birka and Bergen, according to the historical accounts, they practically owned Norway and Sweden which also included most of today’s Finland, though in those days it was known as Eastland, as was mentioned earlier.

In Norway the main trading port was Bergen through which the whole Baltic trade from Birka was directed. It was mentioned earlier that Birka was a trading post and depot in Sweden situated on the island called Bjorko (Birch Island) in the Lake Malaren not far from the well known city of Vasteras. Birka had replaced the City of Visby on the island of Gotland because heathen Slavic tribes had occupied the southern shores of the Baltic Sea all the way to Hedeby in Denmark on the Jutland peninsula. Therefore the Germanic merchants were forced to reroute their Baltic trade through central Sweden to Norway, and Visby was located too far south for to be a practical relay station, which created great hardships to the people in Gotland and Schone in southern Sweden.

In Sweden the most important cities for the Baltic trade were Visby, Birka and Vasteras in addition to the Svea’s Upland’s trading posts were also the highly valued Falun’s copper mines are situated.

In Eastland (Finland) there were four trading posts namely the City of Ulvila at the river Kokemaki for the western part of the Eastland (Finland). In the south-western part there was the City of Turku (Abo) an ancient bartering place at the river Aura. In the central part they had an ancient trading post Borga, which at that time had a fortress, and was the third to have officially the status of a city besides Ulvila and Turku. In the eastern part there was an ancient trading post Viborg (Viipuri) where a fortress was built around 1293 A.D. as was previously mentioned.

For the eastern trade with "Russia" they had the well established trading post of Olhava (Novgorod), which Rurik and his men named Holmgard and was later renamed Novgorod.

As Lothar, the Duke of Saxony started to re-claim the ancient Germanic territories from the heathen Slavs, his son Henry the Lion continued his father's conquests. The Germanic Knights crossed river Vistula in 1226 and continued the occupation of the Kurland and Lettland. The King Waldemar IV Atterdag sold Viro (Estonia) to the Germanic Knights in 1346 A.D. and sacked Visby on Gotland in 1351 A.D. and was forced to sign the peace treaty of Stralsund in 1371 A.D. The Heijno (Hainault-Haino) merchant Patricians, for practical reasons, had to re-organize again their whole Baltic trade.

Considering that the Baltic Sea area had become an important supplier of many commodities, and according to my information, which is based on historical facts, the Heijno (Hainault-Haino) merchant Patricians decided to divide the whole Baltic Sea area into two entities under the leadership of "Die Hanse" whose Head Office was in the Free Imperial City State of Luebeck, so that the western part was designated to Hamburg's Kontor and the eastern part to Luebeck's Kontor.

The western part consisted of the area we know as Sweden including Gotland, and the western part of Eastland (Finland) where the cities of Ulvila and Turku (Abo) were located.

In Turku there was and still is a restaurant called Hamburger Beurs, and as the story goes, "That was the place where the gentlemen, who loved to drink beer, "deposited" their money instead of the Stock Exchange". This story in my opinion clearly indicates that Hamburg was in charge of the trading activities in the western parts of the Eastland (Finland).

The eastern side of the Baltic Sea area was designated to Luebeck's Kontor. It consisted of Stettin (Szczecin) and Danzig (Gdansk) in today's Poland, Memel in Kurland today known as Klaipeda in Lithuania, Riga in Lettland today known as Latvia, Reval (Tallinn) and Narva in Viro (Estonia) on the south side of the Gulf of Finland, Olhava (Novgorod) in "Russia", and on the northern shores of the Gulf of Finland were the cities of Viborg (Viipuri), Kotka and Borga, where the trading activities were managed by Luebeck.

After the Baltic Sea area's trade had been re-organized, the trading post of Birka on the Lake Malaren in central Sweden had lost its importance as a "relay" depot for Bergen and had to be closed, this affected also Bergen. However, due to the growing demand in Europe for salted fish and the fact that Baltic herring stock started to dwindle, Bergen's importance began to increase. It was therefore designated as a branch office "Kontor" especially as its leading merchants were members of the Heijno (Hainault-Haino) Patrician Dynasty. And with this re-organized trade the whole Baltic Sea area started to flourish, and this led to renewed political disturbances, which was orchestrated by Danish Queen Margarete.

There are many versions of the events which took place during the so called period of Kalmar Union, a union of Denmark, Norway and Sweden including Eastland (Finland) from about 1364 A.D. – 1520 A.D.

To give a better understanding of the event I have made a chronological catalogue of the Kings and Caretakers of the said Union period.

1364 A.D. – 1389 A.D. King Albrecht of Mecklenburg
(1389 A.D. – 1412 A.D. Queen Margarete)

1397 A.D. – 1439 A.D. King Erich XIII of Pomerania

1441 A.D. – 1448 A.D. King Kristoffer of Bavaria

1448 A.D. – 1457 A.D. Caretaker Karl VIII Knutson
1457 A.D. - 1464 A.D. King Kristian I
1464 A.D. - 1470 A.D. Caretaker Karl VIII Knutson
1470 A.D. - 1497 A.D. Caretaker Sten Sture (Elder)
1497 A.D. - 1501 A.D. King Johan (Hans) II
1501 A.D. - 1503 A.D. Caretaker Sten Sture (Elder)
1504 A.D. - 1512 A. D. Caretaker Svante Sture
1512 A.D. - 1520 A.D. Caretaker Sten Sture (Younger)
1520 A.D. - 1521 A.D. King Kristian II

By making a summary of all the versions of the events during the “stormy:” times and keeping in mind the historical facts I came to the following conclusion:

As the merchant Patricians had forced King Waldemar IV Atterdag to sign the Stralsund peace treaty in 1371 whereby he had to give full control of the Kattegat and Skagerak Sounds to the Hanse merchants for 15 years, and a promise that after him the Danish Crown would be given to the Prince of Mecklenburg. The Danes (Jutes) considered it as humiliating insult, because they didn't tolerate the Saxons who had caused them to give up their lucrative taxation territories of Schleswig-Holstein, Mecklenburg, Rostock, Luebeck, and chased them out of Pomerania and Stettin (Szczecin).

We also have to remember that in those days in the northern countries all leaders were elected, even the Kings.

Then as the King of Norway who had married Waldemar IV Atterdag's daughter Margarete died in 1380 A.D. his infant son Olaf was elected to be the King of Norway. The Danes (Jutes) reneged on the promise to hand over the Crown of Norway to the Prince of Mecklenburg, and elected Margarete's son Olaf to be their King. That way the infant son of Margarete became the King of Norway and Denmark, but because he was underage “Mama Margarete” had the reigns of both countries.

In 1385 A.D. King Olaf (Queen Margarete) laid a claim to the Crown of Sweden. This didn't please Prince Albrecht of Mecklenburg who was elected as the King of Sweden, and should have been elected as the King of Denmark according to the provisions of the Stralsund's treaty. Neither did it please the ruling classes of Svea Uplanders, nor the Eastlanders (Finns) and especially not the people of Gotland or Schone (Scania) as they were mostly of Gothic origin, and detested the Danes who were of Jutes origin and against whom they had fought many battles in the by-gone centuries. We shouldn't forget that the Goths had given the name to the island of Gotland and that they had built a fortress in Schone called Gothenburg (Goeteborg) to protect themselves against the Danes (Jutes).

As Queen Margarete realized that her suggestion to have her son Olaf accepted on Sweden's throne wouldn't be agreeable, she succeeded to manipulate her niece's 10 year old son Erich, the Prince of Pomerania, who at that time was her ward, to be elected as the heir to the Sweden's throne. So that in March 1388 A.D. in Dalaborg it was agreed that her ward Erich would be elected as King and Margarete was recognized as the ruler of Sweden.

However, there were many who didn't go along with the said arrangement, especially the Gotlanders who were still smarting from Margarete's father Waldemar IV Atterdag's sacking of their city Visby and causing the murder of their merchant Patricians. Neither did other regions succumb to Margarete's ploy to peg up Denmark's shaky finances. Among them were very influential entities such as Stockholm, Kalmar, Linköping and Viborg (Viipuri).

In many historical accounts it is told how energetically Queen Margarete was promoting the idea of a unified north known as Kalmar Union under Danish leadership, and was able to fool many to believe that life would become much better for them all once they get rid of the Germanic merchants.

Therefore, from the said accounts I got the impression that there were much greater reasons why Margarete was so adamant for the creation of the said union.

As Margarete became the Queen of Denmark she realized that Denmark was economically in dire straits. Denmark didn't have the national resources which at that time were needed elsewhere in Europe such as mineral, timber and furs. Though she was also the Queen of Norway the salted fish trade was in the hands of the Heijno (Hainault-Haino) merchant Patricians who were members of "Die Hanse", and didn't have any interest in helping Denmark because they had unpleasant experiences with the Danish (Jutes) rulers in the past centuries. Denmark had also lost its lucrative taxation areas in northern Saxony and Poland. On top of all these economical woes, Margarete wanted to avenge the Heijno (Hainault-Haino) merchant Patricians for the humiliation of her father and all Danes and completely disregarding that her father had sacked the City of Visby in 1361 A.D. and murdered its merchants who were a part of the Heijno (Hainault-Haino) Dynasty. I believe that already King Waldemar IV Atterdag saw a very bleak future for Denmark and therefore was forced to sell Viro (Estonia) to the Germanic Knights, but as the sale of the said Baltic area didn't quite satisfy his needs, he sacked the City of Visby and knowingly antagonized the Heijno (Hainault-Haino) merchant patricians.

By trying to divert the Baltic trade through Denmark to profit from it, Margarete created great hardships to many merchants and regions, among them Stockholm. As was mentioned before, half of the leaders of Stockholm were appointed by the merchant Patricians who owned half of its land area, and they were staunchly against Margarete's scheme, therefore Margarete tried to "starve" them into submission. The merchant Patricians retaliated by blockading all local ships carrying produce to Denmark and diverting ships to Stockholm to feed its population. For this diversion of the local ships to Stockholm, the merchant Patricians had created a special force or coast guards which were called "Vitalienbrueder" (vital broters) from French "vitailleurs", soldiers who supplied the armies in the Hundred Years' War. Later many of these "vital brothers" turned into piracy and the merchant Patricians had to fight them, too. I believe that the pirate Stoertebeker, whom I have already mentioned, was originally one of the "vital brothers".

To further her own goals Margarete started a smear campaign against the Germanic merchant Patricians accusing them of being pirates and claiming that foreign merchants were reaping undue benefits, camouflaging her own greed for fat tolls and taxes. However, this smear campaign backfired later because the Danish Kings appointed foreign nobility into important positions ignoring the local leaders and that created "bad blood" against the Kalmar Union.

We have to remember that the free passage of the Hanse merchants through Kattegat – Skagerak Sounds ended at the end of 1386 A.D. as noted in the Stralsund peace treaty and made it difficult for Hamburg to trade in the Baltic Sea area. However, the Heijno (Hainault – Haino) Patricians, the founders and rulers of "Die Hanse" began to dig the Stecknitz Channel from Luebeck to the river Elbe to simplify Hamburg's trade in the Baltic Sea. All this made Queen Margarete even bolder which antagonized Albrecht of Mecklenburg the elected King of Sweden. Because of the constant aggravations, caused by Queen Margarete, King Albrecht of Mecklenburg assembled an army and started a war against the Danes (Jutes) which he lost and was captured by the Danes in 1389 A.D. At that time the area we know as Germany was split into some 300 principalities and city states, therefore Mecklenburg was too small a principality to be a match for the Danes (Jutes).

The constant disturbances in the Baltic Sea area caused great losses to all merchants of the area, but especially to Hamburg Kontor, therefore the merchant Patricians of "Die Hanse" in Luebeck's Head Office approached the fighting parties to mediate peace in the region. This took place in 1395 A.D. in Lindholm. At this meeting the merchant Patricians paid high ransoms to the Danes for the release of King Albrecht of Mecklenburg. In my opinion this proved two things:

First; Denmark was in great financial crises and therefore Queen Margarete demanded high ransoms for the release of King Albrecht.

Second; It was a well known fact that Heijno (Hainault-Haino) merchant Patricians paid high ransoms only for the release of their own Dynasty's members, of which Queen Margarete was fully aware. However this didn't bring peace in the Baltic Sea because Queen Margarete orchestrated a meeting in 1396 A.D. to confirm her protégée Erich of Pomerania's status as the King of Norway, Denmark and Sweden with complete disregard that Albrecht of Mecklenburg was the elected King of Sweden. Therefore King Albrecht renewed his attacks against the Danes from Gotland and his son Erich of Mecklenburg began to use the title of King of Sweden in 1396.

And then on June 17, 1397 in Kalmar, Queen Margarete was able to manipulate herself and her protégée Erich of Pomerania to be crowned as the ruler of the Union. In the same year the Stecknitz Channel was completed and Queen Margarete lost her Kattegat/Skagerrak "trump card".

To obtain Stockholm's support she had to confirm trading privileges of "Die Hanse" in three kingdoms. Though Queen Margarete was able to have herself and Eric of Pomerania crowned as the rulers of the Kalmar Union there were still many who disagreed with her to have the three northern kingdoms united under Denmark's leadership, and to have large sums in tolls and taxes sent to them just to be leaders, this disagreement later cost Erich of Pomerania the loss of his crown.

After Queen Margarete died, regardless that she had coached Erich to be a good ruler, he started to rule as a despot and in that way planted a seed of discontent because he lacked the shrewdness of Margarete. From the information I have been able to obtain, I have the impression that he pitched regions against each other, and in his arrogance underestimated the Heijno (Hainault-Haino) merchant Patricians strength.

From the history books you may read about the Kalmar Union's constant political manoeuvres, blockades, hijackings of merchants' ships, and the wars which affected mainly the western sector of the Baltic Sea trade, which was assigned to Hamburg's Kontor.

The trade of the eastern sector which was Luebeck Kontor's responsibility was practically untouched by said disturbances, and on the top of that it had the protection of the Germanic Knights in Kurland, Lettland (Latvia) and Viro (Estonia). Therefore the trade in the eastern sector began to flourish.

At the time the merchant Patricians' Baltic trade was routed through Birka and Bergen. The central and the eastern Eastland's (Finland) merchants from Viborg (Viipuri) and Borga sailed along the northern shores of the Gulf of Finland to Purkal where they joined the Baltic area's ships. The Baltic countries' merchants had to sail from Riga to Tallinn where they joined the merchants from Narva and Olhava (Novgorod) and together they crossed the Gulf of Finland to Purkal. From Purkal a fleet of merchants' ships sailed through several anchorage places to Lemboete where they were joined by the merchants from Ulvila and Turku, and together they crossed the Gulf of Bothnia to Birka as was described earlier. Now as the Baltic trade was protected from the Slavs, the merchant Patricians had to reroute again the whole Baltic Sea area's eastern trade. The merchants from Borga sailed to Purkal, crossed the Gulf of Finland to Tallinn. The merchants from Viborg sailed south and followed the southern shores of the Gulf of Finland to Narva and from there to Tallinn where they had protection of the Germanic Knights all the way to Luebeck.

Due to the constant disturbances and harassments in the western part of the Baltic Sea many Eastland's (Finland) merchants from the central, south, western and even some of the western areas began to transport their goods and wares by utilizing many lakes and rivers to the southern end of Lake Paeijaenne in central Finland, where the Heijno (Hainault-Haino) merchant Patricians had established a depot and trading place in the location which was one of the oldest places of habitation in Finland, dating back to about 7000 B.C. – 7300 B.C.

This trading place was called by the local population as Heijno's place or in Finnish Heinola. This additional merchandise which came from the Western part of Finland increased the volume of the goods and wares to the point that the narrow and shallow Borga (Porvoo) river couldn't handle it. Therefore the merchant Patricians had to reroute their trade to the much wider and deeper Kymi River where they could use larger barges, and the City of Kotka replaced the City of Borga. The City of Kotka is even today the friendship city of Luebeck in Finland.

The whole Baltic trade with Viro (Estonia), Lettland (Latvia) and Kurland (Lithuania) had also increased because of the protected environment

All this didn't go unnoticed by King Erich of the Kalmar Union, who with complete disregard of the fact that Queen Margarete had confirmed the merchant Patricians (Die Hanse) trading privileges in all three northern kingdoms, but he felt that because he had full control of all western and northern ports, and as the Prince of Pomerania he also had a part of the southern shores of the Baltic Sea in his control, but in his greediness wanted to have the whole Baltic Sea area under his control. In order to reach his goal he started a war against Holstein and "Die Hanse" though Erich of Pomerania was fully aware that the Heijno (Hainault – Haino) Patricians had a stationed their Navy in Holstein but in the fear for not to antagonize all merchants he didn't attack Luebeck.

In this war both sides used the capture and hijacking of ships and blockading in addition to military and naval operations. As the war dragged on, it had a devastating effect on the whole economy and led to recession, especially in Sweden's Upland, which relied heavily on the export of iron, copper and other metals and on the import of produce. The dissatisfaction which started in Upland led by Engelbrecht Engelbrechtson spread very fast throughout the whole Sweden, especially, as the tax collectors were foreigners who ruthlessly collected the taxes in full, completely disregarding the needs of the people. And as the dissatisfaction grew into a full scale rebellion King Erich was forced to sign a peace treaty with Holstein and "Die Hanse" in Vordingborg, Sweden. The events which took place after this peace treaty finally cost King Erich his crown in 1439 A.D. and Karl Knutson became temporarily the Caretaker of the Union.

In 1441 A.D., Kristoffer of Bavaria was elected as the King of the Union on the stones on Mora, Sweden and Karl Knutson was appointed as the "Governor" of Eastland (Finland). King Kristoffer of Bavaria was a very skilled and peace loving ruler, which was also very beneficial for the merchant Patricians (Die Hanse). In 1446 King King Kristoffer decided to unite Gotland with the Union because it was still ruled by Erich of Pomerania. The armed forces of the Union were sent to Gotland under the command of Karl Knutson.

However, King Kristoffer decided to settle the whole case peacefully through diplomacy, but suddenly died on his journey to Helsingborg, Sweden in 1448 A.D. and the Kalmar Union was in trouble again. After King Kristoffer died the Danes (Jutes) elected in September 1448 A.D. Christian the Count of Odenburg as the King, but the Swedes had already elected in the summer of 1448 A.D. Karl Knutson as their King. The Swedes had in mind to re-organize the Kalmar Union under the leadership of Sweden but the Danes disagreed. The result of this was that Danish King Christian I and Swedish King Karl went to war which lasted about two years from 1451 A.D. to 1453 A.D. In 1453 A.D. - 1455 A.D. there was an armistice, but after that the war resumed and lasted until people in Upland started the rebellion in Berglagen in 1457 A.D.

The reason for this rebellion was the same as that of Engelbrecht's rebellion in 1430 A.D. against King Erich.

Karl Knutson was defeated and fled to Danzig in Prussia and Christian I was invited to be the King of Sweden.

However, the “Honeymoon” didn’t last very long because of the heavy taxes which King Christian demanded to be paid to Denmark. In January 1464 A.D. Linköping’s Bishop Kettil Karl’s son Vasa hoisted the flag of rebellion against King Christian I, and as the rebellion spread very fast King Christian had to come to Sweden with his army, lost his bid for the crown and had to return to Denmark on St. Baptist’s day in 1464 A.D.

This helped the supporters of Karl Knutson to invite him after seven years in exile to be again the King of Sweden, which he accepted and arrived in Stockholm in August 1464. However, due to the Bishops coup-de-tat he was forced to resign and was given a fortress in Eastland (Finland) as his “retirement home”. The political life in Sweden was at that time in chaos, and after many manipulations the Swedish upper classes invited Karl Knutson for a third time to be their King in November 1467 A.D. which position he held until his death on 15th of May 1470 A.D.

After Karl Knutson’s death Sten Sture (elder) was appointed as the Caretaker of the government in 1470 A.D. However, officially Danish King Christian I was the King of the Kalmar Union, and therefore he came to Stockholm in July 1471 A.D. with his army. The decisive battle between the Swedes and the army of Christian I took place in Brunkenborg on October 10, 1471 A.D. The Swedes defeated King Christian’s army and this battle became a national victory over the traditional enemy, the Danes, (Jutes), who had tried to dominate the Swedes for centuries. This victory helped also the Heijno (Hainault - Haino) merchant Patricians and their enterprise “Die Hanse” to be in charge of the entire Baltic Sea trade.

After that victory, Sten Sture continued to be the Caretaker of Sweden until his death in 1503 A.D. with one brief interruption from 1497 A.D. to 1501 A.D., when he was forced by the unionists to yield to Johan (Hans) King of Danes, the son of Christian I.

In the meantime the ruler of Olhava (Novgorod) had lost the war against Ivan III, the Grand Duke of Muscovy, who became the ruler of Olhava (Novgorod) and the surrounding large land area. I believe that it was Ivan III who gave to Olhava its Novgorod name which means in the Russian language “New Castle”, because the Swedes had built a fortress in 1480 A.D. on the land which Ivan III considered as a part of his Duchy, and because the Swedes named this new fortress as “Ny Slott”, which means in Swedish “New Castle”, Ivan III also called “The Great”, had to encounter the Swedes and also named his new fortress as New Castle, or in Russian Novgorod as his fortress was newer than the Swedish fortress. Later the Swedes changed the name “Ny Slott” to St. Olav’s castle, in Finnish “Olavinlinna”.

Ivan III also built another fortress in 1492 A.D. at the river Narva, and called it Ivangorod, because he suspected that the Swedes would attack “Novgorod”, due to the long standing territorial disputes concerning the taxation rights in Eastland (Finland).

The fact that Ivan III became the ruler of “Novgorod” was also very devastating to the Heijno (Hainault – Haino) merchant Patricians of Luebeck because he jailed all Germanic merchants in “Novgorod”, sent them to dungeons and demanded high ransoms, many of whom died in the dungeons before Luebeck was able to deliver the ransoms. He also confiscated everything what belong to the Hanse Patricians in “Novgorod” where they had built a German quarter and owned vast areas of land in and around the City of “Novgorod”.

We also have to remember that in those days “Novgorod” didn’t have any seaworthy ships to protect itself against possible attacks from the Gulf of Finland, nor did the “Novgorod’s” own merchants have any seaworthy ships, therefore Ivan’s act had a very devastating effect on “Novgorod’s” economy. The first seaworthy ships in northern “Russia” were acquired by Peter the Great who was the Czar of Russia from 1682 A.D. to 1725 A.D.

As then, the Danish King Johan (Hans) of Kalmar Union tried to make peace in 1498 A.D. with Ivan III the Grand Duke of Muscovy and ruler of Novgorod, by giving up territories in Eastland (Finland) which the Swedes considered as a part of Sweden, the unionists turned against Johan (Hans) and appointed Sten Sture in 1501 A.D. to continue his work as the Caretaker of the Swedish government.

Sten Sture died in December 1503 A.D. and after him Svante Sture was appointed to act as the Caretaker of the Swedish government in 1504 A.D. Svante Sture's tenure in his office lasted about eight years, during which time he was constantly forced to fight the Danes (Jutes). These wars also had very devastating effect on Sweden's and Eastland's (Finland's) economies, because the powerful Danish Navy raided constantly the merchants' ships. Finally Svante Sture had to appeal to Luebeck's Patricians, and with their powerful "Die Hanse" Navy they were able to bring peace on the seas. Svante Sture's war efforts against the Danes (Jutes) lasted until his death in 1511 A.D.

Considering all the facts anyone in his right mind will have to agree, that it wasn't because of the merchant Patricians' so called "protectionism", as many "historians" are trying to make us to believe that "Die Hanse" prevented the local merchants to trade on the free markets, concealing the fact that it was the greedy rulers who robbed and hijacked their goods and wares and even their ships.

The local merchants didn't have the means nor the power to protect themselves against the greedy local rulers and the Danes as the mighty Hanse was able to do, and even they had to dig the Stecknitz Channel which was completed in 1397 A.D. as was mentioned earlier, to by-pass the Sounds of Kattegat and Skagerrak. And later they also had to dig the North Sea Channel from Holstein's capital city Kiel to the North Sea.

In fact the real reasons why "Die Hanse" survived and flourished for centuries were that its owners the Heijno (Hainault – Haino) merchant Patricians had a centuries, if not millenniums, old ancient ducal rank, whereby every male descendant inherited his father's rank, so that they all worked together for the benefit of their Dynasty's cause, and that they were related to many powerful rulers and the Italian Patricians, and were also the Emperors' Counsellors.

After Svante Sture's death, his son Sten Sture the Younger, was able to have himself elected as the Caretaker of Sweden's government in July 1512 A.D. and made in the same year a temporary peace with Denmark. He also renewed the peace treaty with Russia which lasted regardless that the Danish new ruler King Christian II renewed Denmark's treaty with Moscow in 1516 A.D. in the hope that Moscow would attack Sweden. As this attempt didn't materialize, in the summer of 1517 A.D. King Christian II attacked Sweden alone. The main battle of this war was in Asunden in western Sweden in 1520 A.D. in which Sten Sture the Younger was mortally wounded and died on February 3, 1520 A.D.

On March 6th 1520 A.D., Sweden's ruling classes made peace with King Christian II in Upsala, but Sten Sture's wife Christina Gyllenstierna continued the fight against King Christian II for Stockholm until October when she finally had to give up her fight. King Christian II promised an amnesty to all his opponents, but regardless of his promises King Christian started his "kangaroo courts" and indiscriminate executions. At that time there was told a story among the people that "as the city gates were opened you could see a bunch of babbling gentlemen and only one man standing against the King and even that man was a woman".

And then came Gustavus Ericson Wasa, and that was the end of the Kalmar Union.

CHAPTER XXII

As the war against Erich of Pomerania ended around 1434 A.D., the merchant Patricians of Luebeck's Kontor began to strengthen their commercial relations with the Baltic countries. Their first task was to secure their trading routes on the eastern side of the Baltic Sea.

Most likely King Erich of Denmark and Kalmar Union had used the Kursiu (Kurisch) Lagoon to stalk the Hanse's ships during his war against Holstein and "Die Hanse". It is said that the Crusaders had built the fortress at the entrance of the Kursiu (Kurisch) Lagoon, but I believe that the merchant Patricians caused the building of the said fortress in 13th century and named it Memelburg, which is known today as Klaipeda. From all the information I have been able to obtain, I have the impression that the Germanic Knights didn't have the means at that time to undertake such an expensive work, and therefore the merchant Patricians must have financed the building of Memelburg as they had done in so many other building undertakings. Considering that at that time the Fortress was a part of Pomerania, King Erich used it to hijack the Hanse merchants' ships.

Now as that danger was eliminated the Hanse merchant Patricians elevated their trading posts of Riga in Lettland (Latvia) and Reval in Viro (Tallinn in Estonia) to Branch Offices (Kontors), and sent their own family members to manage the trading activities in the Kontors, therefore the two cities became known as "Die Hanse" cities.

All this didn't come too early because as in 1490 A.D., Ivan III the Great, Duke of Muscovy sacked Olhava (Novgorod) and imprisoned the Hanse merchants for high ransoms, not understanding, nor caring that the local merchants would suffer great losses too, as they didn't have seaworthy ships, nor would they have been able to escape the pirates. Even the Swedish and Eastlanders (Finnish) merchants had to appeal to the Hejino (Hainault – Haino) merchant Patricians to have their powerful "Die Hanse" Navy to protect them against the Danes (Jutes).

Considering the tense political situation at that time between the Danes (Jutes) and the rest of the Fenno – Scandia countries, the constant rivalry between Sweden and Olhava (Novgorod) over territorial and taxation rights in Eastland, (Finland) and the devastation of the Hanse merchant Patricians' trading activities in Olhava (Novgorod) by Ivan III. The local Finnic merchants together with the Luebeck's merchant Patricians re-organized their "Russian" route through Pihkova (Pskov).

From the trading post of Pihkova (Pskov) the trading route was directed through Lake Pihkova (Pskov) to Lake Peipus (Chudskoye Ozero). However, from Peipus (Chudskoye Ozero) they couldn't sail straight along the river Narva to the city of Narva which is located at the Gulf of Finland, because Ivan III had built his fortress Ivangorod and controlled the waterway. Instead, the merchants had to use the river Emajogi and establish a trading post and a depot in the city of Tartu from where the wares were taken either to Reval (Tallinn), or Paernu, or to Lake Vorts and from there by rivers to Riga.

For innumerable centuries Riga had been the main trading post in Lettland (Latvia). It is situated at the Gulf of Riga where the river Daugava (Western Dvina) flows into the Baltic Sea. The sources of the river Daugava are in the same general area as the sources of the rivers Volga, Oka and Dniepr. The river Volga flows through whole "Russia" and empties its waters into the Caspian Sea. The river Oka is an important contributory river of the river Volga. And the river Dniepr goes through the area we know today as Belorussia and Ukraine, and flows into the Black Sea. These four rivers were, and still are the most important waterways of the whole Eastern Europe north-east of the Carpathian Mountains, and were well known to the eastern people for many millenniums.

Here we have to refresh our memories of the migration pattern of the so called "Indo-Europeans" as they migrated back to Europe after the Ice-Age.

Nobody really knows when exactly the migration from Asia back to Europe started and how it was done. The only thing we can assume today is that as the climate became warmer, the first ones were the Saami, or Laplanders who were forced to follow their reindeer herds. Many of these reindeer herders were also of Finno – Ugrian origin. As they passed the "corridor" between the Ural Mountains and Caspian Sea they had to turn north and follow the river Volga.

Whether they came in a group of families or whether they “trickled” one by one is unknown to us. One thing we know for sure is that slowly more and more migrants started to return to Europe and that during several millenniums they and their descendants became tribes and nations.

We also know that there were two major language groups namely the Finno-Ugrian and Indo-Germanic. The Finnic language group had several tribes and dialects, even nations, until Stalin’s murderous regime decimated many of them, some of them even to the point of extinction (genocide).

The Indo – Germanic group consisted also of several tribes and nations, but at the time of the Huns’ invasion in the 5th century A.D., the Germanic groups east of the Carpathian Mountains were devastated, and many tribes and even nations west of the Carpathian Mountains were forced to leave their place of habitation. Such were the Goths, the Franks, the Saxons, the Burgundians, etc. etc. However, there were several Germanic tribes who were not affected directly by the Huns’ invasion such as the Jutes (Danes), the Angles, the Friesians etc. because the Huns’ invasion stopped at about the Oder/Neisse line. Nor did the Huns’ invasion directly affect the Finno – Ugrians, for example, Rurik, his lieutenants Askold and Dir and their men who were of Gothic and Finnic origin, were able to communicate with the Germanic and Finnic people of “Russia”. Considering also that after the Huns’ invasion the Slavic people started to invade the area, and the Cyrillic alphabet which is used in the Slavic “Russian” language and is attributed to St. Cyril the 9th century Apostle to the Slavs, I don’t believe that there was much Slavic “Russian” spoken by the Finnic and Germanic people at the time when Rurik ventured into the area.

We also have to consider that at the time these northern marauders the “var jags” whom the northern story tellers fancy to call “Vikings”, called Novgorod by the name “Holmgard” (Island Court) and not Novgorod. I also want to remind the readers again that as late as 1863 during Alexander III reign as the Czar (Emperor) of Russia (1881 A.D. – 1894 A.D.) less than 50 % of all “Russians” spoke the Russian (Slavic) language.

So what could have been the percentage of Russian Slavic speaking people in “Russia during Rurik’s time in the 9th century?

A very good example also is the fact that in the 14th century Bishop Tapani had to create an alphabet for the Komi Finns based on the Cyrillic alphabet, because most likely the local people didn’t understand Slavic “Russian” as he preached to them in a foreign tongue.

It has also been said that the local inhabitants invited Rurik and his men to be their leaders. The first thing which came to my mind was;

In what language was the invitation made?

According to my understanding, Rurik must have been a descendant of these Goths who were forced by the Huns in the 5th century to flee their original place of habitation and ended up in Gotland where a part of their tribe’s members had lived for centuries. Most of his men must have been of Gothic and Finnic origin therefore they were able to communicate with the local people in “Russia”. We also have to remember that the Goths were related to the Bastarnai people who lived around 500 BC. – 200 B.C. in today’s Ukraine.

Considering all these facts it must have been a very easy task for Rurik and his men to move around in the vast unknown area we know today as Russia (or ex-soviet Union).

By looking into the migration patterns of the Finnic and Indo – Germanic tribes and considering that all of them had their own merchants who utilized all waterways to transport their goods and wares long before the Huns’ invasion, we have to agree that as they migrated through the whole area during several millenniums, they also must have been fully familiar with the geography of the area.

They didn't write their knowledge down, but delegated it by the word of mouth as was the custom in those days due to the roaming marauders, and still the Huns were able to find out the rich areas. Therefore many modern time "historians'" stories and explanations about Slavic tribes sound to me more or less like fairytales. A very good example is the name "Novgorod" which has been so strongly publicized that most people have the impression that "Novgorod" is the original name of the said location, and have never heard its original "Olhava" name or the name "Holmgard" which was given to the area by Rurik and his "var jags".

The trade with Liivs (Lithuania) in the Baltic Sea which was first interrupted by the Huns, then by the heathen Slavs and then after that by King Erich of the Kalmar Union, had to be re-organized. Now as the Kursiu (Kurisch) lagoon was secured, the Liivs (Lithuania) had a chance to resume their Baltic trade, though their main trading areas were the areas we know as the Ukraine on the east side of the Carpathian Mountains, and the area west of the said mountains which we know today as Poland, Czech Republic, Slovakia, Hungary and Romania, these areas were populated before Huns' invasion by various Germanic tribes. Considering that the main river in Lithuania is the Nemunas (Neman) river which receives part of its water from Pinsk marshes and that the river Dniepr receives also part of its water from the same marshes, it is only logical that the Liivs (Lithuanians) were fully aware of the river Dniepr which flows into the Black Sea. In many historical accounts you may read that the Liivs (Lithuanians) had trading relations from the river Dniepr to the river Bug which flows into the Black Sea. Therefore I believe that Rurik and his men learned about these waterways from the local people with whom they were able to communicate in their own language.

Considering all the historical accounts and geographical facts it is safe to say that for example, the trading post of Kiev on the river Dniepr was established already in pre-historical times, because even Herodotus spoke about "Scythians" as grain producers and traders around 500 B.C.

I also believe that part of the Romans' amber trade in 14 A.D. came through the eastern trade route because the main areas where the amber was found are the south and east shores of the Baltic Sea, and the marshes of the said general area. This trade was most likely interrupted by the Huns' invasion in the 5th century.

We have to remember that the times in central and northern medieval Europe were dangerous, brutal and lawless therefore merchants whom we consider today as "middlemen" were essential for successful trading, middlemen who knew safe routes, and who were known to the local people, and who were trusted by the local people. On top of all that they were merchants who had seaworthy ships, and were able to protect themselves and their merchandise against greedy rulers, pirates and robbers. Merchants from smaller tribes and nations, especially those who didn't have an access to the sea and therefore didn't have seaworthy vessels, wouldn't have been able to survive in those environments.

Now, as the Liivs' (Lithuanians') merchants had the chance to renew their Baltic Sea trade, they had in the beginning some difficulties in adjusting to the brutal political situation in Europe, because in the east they were used to relatively free movement of their wares, especially before the northern marauders had invaded "Russia". However, as the Liivs' (Lithuanians') merchants realized that they were powerless against the local European rulers, especially the Danes, the Luebeck's merchant Patricians were able to organize their whole eastern Baltic trade.

These were the environments which the merchant Patricians of Luebeck's Kontor had to overcome as they re-routed their Baltic and "Russian" trade after the war against King Erich had ended and Ivan III the Duke of Muscovy had sacked "Novgorod".

The condition in the western part of the Baltic Sea became worse after King Christian II attacked Sweden in 1517 A. D.

To understand the situation we have to analyze the social structures of Western Europe and the Fenno – Scandia countries, which were completely different from those in the east where traders could move their merchandise freely by using waterways which weren't owned by anyone. For example the Komi – Finns' merchants traded from their capital city Syktyvkar, as far in the east as beyond the Ural Mountains and in the west to Lake Ladoga, and didn't have to pay tolls or taxes to trade with the people, because nobody owned the land nor the people, due to the fact that the feudal system was at that time unknown in "Russia" and in the Baltic countries. In fact the situation was the same in the whole of eastern area, east of the Carpathian Mountains, and therefore trading in the east was much easier than in the Western Europe, and "middlemen" were unknown, nor were they needed.

The feudal system in "Russia" was introduced sometime after 1613 A.D. as Romanov Dynasty came into power, at the time, when Western Europe had began to repeal the feudal system and serfdom.

During the feudal system the farmers in Europe didn't own the land they cultivated, because the local rulers owned the land. At that time the farmers weren't in any better position than the serfs except that they weren't sold together with the land as cattle, as was the case later in "Russia" when Alexander II, the Czar of Russia emancipated the serfs for which he was assassinated in 1881 A.D.

In Western Europe during and after the Interregnum, the whole governing system collapsed and local rulers such as Kings, Dukes, Margraves, Counts and even Bishops assumed despotic powers. They set arbitrarily their own taxes and tolls which almost suffocated the commercial life, especially in Germany, which fell into some 300 hundred independent principalities and city states. The same kind of "anarchy" prevailed also in Italy, in Spain, in Belgium and in Holland (Netherlands) with the exception of France and England who were able to maintain some kind of order.

In Germany, where in some cases the local rulers were fighting each other to expand their own land area to have more tax payers, created tremendous hardships for the merchants. In my opinion, this was one of the strongest reasons why the Heijno (Hainault – Haino) merchant Princes decided to establish "Die Hanse". They had experienced great hardships because of the local rulers' greed in the past, and the case of Bruges had been a very good example.

In Fenno – Scandia countries the situation likened more to the eastern areas and the Baltic countries with the exception that the Danes (Juts) were constantly trying to subjugate the whole area under their yoke the way they had done in the past in Anglia, in Western Germany and in Poland, the Kalmar Union was a very good example of their activities.

In Western Europe the ruling classes, nobility and clergy had adopted the feudal system, and considered all other people as commoners who didn't have anything to say in governmental affairs or in their own destiny.

In Fenno – Scandia countries all men were equals because they were considered to be free born. The so-called nobility, and later the clergy, were descendants of those whose ancestors were elected at one or another time to be the leaders. They were closely related to the farmers and other free born men. Some of the farmers were also given the status of tax exemption and therefore were considered as some sort of farmer nobility. They were usually farmers, who during the war times, had contributed to the war efforts by sending a son with a horse into cavalry detachment. These farmers represented all other farmers in the assembly of men, and among them was also the Wasa family.

In the beginning "Die Hanse" was strictly a Heijno (Hainault – Haino) family enterprise, but later as non-family merchants were accepted into the fold, it became a mercantile and maritime empire without borders, and worked about the same way as today's franchise business and not as a league, and that is why it survived for centuries.

In “Die Hanse” non – family members had to relinquish certain benefits to get the protection of “Die Hanse” against the greedy rulers, and their ships had the right to display the emblems of the cities which they had the right to visit.

In a franchise the franchisee has to pay a certain amount in cash and purchase most of the products from the franchisor to have the right to use the name and logo of the franchisor’s company, and also to benefit from the franchisor’s advertisements.

As Danish King Christian II began his war against Sweden in the summer of 1517 A.D. on his advance toward Stockholm he took many prisoners. Among them was also Gustavus Erich’s son, a member of the well-known farmer’s nobility, the Wasa family, who succeeded to escape from the Danish prison, and was given sanctuary by the Luebeck’s Patricians. In Luebeck, Gustavus Wasa lived with Kord Koenig in the Kohlmarkt for about a year, but as he heard that his friend Sten Sture Younger had died in February 1520 A.D. in the battle of Asunden, he mobilized a resistance force with the help of Luebeck’s Heijno (Hainault – Haino) merchant Patricians who were fed up with the Danes’ constant disturbances. At the end of May 1520 A.D. Gustavus Wasa landed in Sweden close to the fortress of Kalmar where he began to organize resistance army against the Danes, but at that time the people of Sweden weren’t too enthusiastic in starting a rebellion. However, as king Christian II was officially installed as the King of Sweden on November 4, 1520 A.D. and didn’t keep his promise of amnesty to all of his adversaries, but started on January 7, 1521 A.D. his “kangaroo courts”, and random executions of his opponents, the mood of Swedes changed practically over-night. Gustavus Wasa was then able to assemble an army of around 4000 farmers which force grew daily as he advanced toward Stockholm.

King Christian II executed over 89 Swedish leaders among whom were Gustavus Wasa’s father, his two uncles, and his brother-in-law and imprisoned his three sisters. King Christian II had calculated that by executing the nobility, “ordinary people” would support him, not understanding that there wasn’t any animosity between the “ordinary people” and the nobility simply because they were mostly related to each other through marriages.

And this was the end of the Kalmar Union.

In January 1521 A.D. Gustavus Wasa was elected as the leader of the farmers.

On August 23, 1521 A.D. Gustavus Wasa was elected as the Caretaker of the Swedish Government.

On June 6, 1521 A.D. Gustavus Wasa took traditional King’s oath and became the King of Sweden.

The merchant Patricians had given Gustavus Wasa sanctuary for a year in Luebeck after he escaped from the Danish prison.

Luebeck’s merchant Patricians advanced to Gustavus Wasa 120.000.- Luebeck’s marks for his war efforts, which amounted at that time to four years tax revenue of the whole Eastland (Finland).

Merchant Patricians’ “Die Hanse” ships delivered to Sweden in 1522 A.D. great amounts of war material.

Gustavus Wasa was forced to appeal to the merchant Patricians for help to have the Hanse fleet to subdue the strong Danish Navy in northern parts of the Baltic Sea and in the Gulf of Finland, for which he gave to “Die Hanse” trading privileges in Sweden and Eastland (Finland).

Then, for the unexplainable reasons, Gustavus Wasa turned against his benefactors, the Heijno (Hainault – Haino) merchant Patricians of Luebeck, and terminated unilaterally most of their trading privileges which were made to last forever. And then, together with the then King of Denmark and Norway, permitted the Dutch and English merchants to enter the Baltic Sea to create competition against “Die Hanse”, not understanding that they were also merchants of the First Guild, who as such, weren’t interested in helping the Swedish merchants to get into the international trade, especially as the Swedish merchants didn’t have, at that time, ocean worthy cargo ships.

Around that time started also the Church reformation which Gustavus Wasa used to increase his fortunes by curbing the privileges of the Catholic Church. At that time in Fenno – Scandia, which was Christianized fairly late, the people welcomed the reduction of the Church's power because they were accustomed to freedom of religion. We have to remember that in Sweden the Church and Uppsala's heathen temple were practically side by side in peaceful co – existence.

Because the Church had gained too much secular power and wealth and had accumulated large areas of land, Gustavus Wasa forced the churches and monasteries to contribute to his war efforts by demanding them to give large sums in precious metals and expropriating most of their land ownership. By doing this he also expropriated large areas of land from the merchant Patricians by claiming that as they hadn't cultivated it, the land belonged to the Crown.

He also tried to force the merchants to divert their Baltic Sea and Novgorod trade to go through Sweden to be able to levy taxes on said trade, and helped the Dutch merchants to compete against "Die Hanse". For this purpose he founded a city on the north side of the Gulf of Finland, across from the well-known Hanse City Raewel (Tallinn). This new city Gustavus Wasa named Helsingfors (Helsinki). However, the "Russian" merchants, especially from Novgorod, preferred to trade in Viborg (Viipuri) rather than in unknown Helsingfors, and because of the war between "Russia" and the Germanic Knights in the Baltic area the trade was discontinued, and the trade in Viborg's (Viipuri) with "Die Hanse" almost quadrupled. This didn't go unnoticed by Gustavus Wasa who in his greediness increased the taxes in 1559 A.D. on the said trade of "Die Hanse" from 1-2% to 5%, and in retaliation on Gustavus Wasa's actions the merchant Patricians rerouted most of their Viborg's (Viipuri) trade to the City of Narva. Many modern "historians" have tried to justify Gustavus Wasa's actions.

However, considering the historical facts, I got the impression that Gustavus Wasa became "big headed" and in his megalomaniacal greed acted in the same way as his predecessors, the rulers of the Kalmar Union.

It is no wonder that the merchant Patricians who had worked hard and sacrificed a lot, even human lives, to create good working relations with northern and "Russian" merchants for centuries, had at that time a saying in Luebeck;

"That's what you get as you make a king out of an oxen driver".

Here I want to add that during the 30 Years' War, Gustavus Wasa's grandson Gustavus II Adolph, who became the King of Sweden at the age of 17 years, and was highly respected as an upright ruler, remembered even today, spared Luebeck, leaving it untouched in his war against Roman Catholics. Was he ashamed of his grandfather's treacherous actions?

CHAPTER XXIII

Meanwhile the merchant Patricians had also suffered setbacks in Norway as Bergen was sacked twice. The first time in 1393 A.D. by the "victual brothers" who had tuned pirates and the second time in 1438 A.D. by Bartel Bot.

Regardless of these setbacks "Die Hanse" had proved to be fully capable in protecting themselves as they had forced Danish King Waldemar II Atterdag in Stralsund into humiliating peace treaty, and their commercial enterprise "Die Hanse" had compelled Danish King Erich of Pomerania to abdicate in 1439 A.D. Therefore the rest of the central European merchants began to look to "Die Hanse" for protection in their troubles with the greedy rulers and robbers and wanted to join the enterprise, so that at its zenith there were about 200 member cities and principalities in "Die Hanse".

They also had depots in the Mediterranean area in Spain and Italy for the acquisition of African, Middle-Eastern and Far Eastern merchandise. Of the depots, the most important was in Venice known as "Fondaco dei Tedeschi".

However, these depots were used only as storages and not as trading places, because the Hainault merchant Patricians didn't compete against their merchant Patrician relatives but worked together with them. A very good example of this co-operation was the Di Medici family from Florence who had depots and offices in Bruges, and later also in Luebeck.

The fact that so many non-family merchants wanted to join "Die Hanse" created new and unforeseen burdens and problems for the Head Office.

New members who weren't a part of the Heijno (Hainault – Haino) Patricians' Dynasty had to be able to identify themselves as being members of "Die Hanse".

The Patricians old and traditional "red and white" striped sails, which they had initiated and used for centuries to identify themselves as being peaceful merchants, had been robbed by the pirates, and used as camouflage by pirates to rob people, and therefore had to be replaced by sails which had their ancient insignia, the double-headed eagle from the late 6th millenniums B.C. as mentioned earlier.

There was also the question of competition and disputes among the member merchants, As long as the members of "Die Hanse" belonged to the same Dynasty, they all worked for the same goal and there was no danger of competition. But as new members were accepted into "Die Hanse" under the condition that they would abide by the "company's" rules, the possibility of competition had to be eliminated, because many rulers tried to encourage the non-family members to compete against "Die Hanse" by using the well-known principles of "divide and rule", to create friction among the member merchants in order to render confusion and in that way be able to levy lucrative taxes and tolls.

To avoid these possibilities the new members were given shields or insignia of the cities they had right to visit as their ports-of-call. Their ships had to display these shields on the boards of their ships to prove their legal right to enter said cities.

To eliminate some of the disputes and animosities between the member merchants the Patricians had to legislate many laws, rules and regulations, some of which are observed even today, such as the right weight and the right measure. They also had to establish new profession, the profession of weighing and measuring assessors to act as arbitrators in possible disputes.

We have to remember that at that time there were many different weights and measurements in various countries which had to be taken into consideration. For example, when a ruler of a country died the body parts of his successor were measured which then became the new official measurements. The length of his foot became a "foot", the length of his step became a "yard", the length of his forearm became the "elbow" (which was used to measure cloth) etc. etc.

Considering also that the merchant Patricians didn't have the judicial power to enforce their laws, rules and regulations and that they affected only a small sector of society, their laws, which were known as the Law of Luebeck weren't written down as the Magna Carta had been in England where the rulers' powers were clearly established within their country's borders. The merchant Patricians' laws were delegated by word of mouth as was the custom in those days. In fact the merchant Patricians had only two possibilities to enforce their decisions, either to terminate the offender's membership in "Die Hanse" or to blockade the city of the offender. However, later as the countries became more advanced and began to encourage competition even these two remedies became ineffectual. But in those days the suspension or expulsion from "Die Hanse" was equal in many cases as throwing the offender "to the wolves", and blockading a city was giving the local rulers, of that city, a free hand to rob the merchants at will.

In case of suspension or expulsion, the offending merchant had to stop using the double headed eagle insignia on his ships' sails and return it together with the shields of the cities he had right to visit. However, this was a very tricky undertaking because if he refused to return the insignia and the cities' shields in order to enjoy the good will and reputation of "Die Hanse", there was no legal way to force him to do so. Therefore the merchant Patricians had to appeal to the cities to force the offenders to abide by the laws, rules and regulations, and if the cities refused to help the Patricians sole remedy was to blockade the city. Therefore you may read from many "historians'" accounts that "Die Hanse" used blockades to further their "greedy protectionists'" goals.

We shouldn't forget the lawless times of the era as the merchant Patricians tried to bring some civility and honesty into a trade which the "nobility" considered to be unworthy, because the entrepreneurs had to work for their living and in their opinion were "despised commoners". Nor should we forget that the Hainault (Haino) merchant Patricians had pioneered the whole Baltic Sea area, had lost many lives at the time as the nobility in their greediness robbed, raped and murdered and left behind spilled tracts. According to my understanding the pioneers and their descendants have every right to enjoy the fruits of their work without being forced to share them with "free riders", people who force their way into other man's domain to benefit from other peoples' work, whether they are noblemen or not, should be classified as invaders.

We also have to understand that the whole Baltic Sea area, which consists of Fenno – Scandia, Northern Germany, Poland, the Baltic countries, and the area we know today as Russia were an integral part of the trading activities of "Die Hanse". Said area held a commanding role in the wealth of "Die Hanse", because of its natural resources especially timber which was mostly depleted in central and southern Europe and the British Isles, and led to many conflicts.

The first attempt against the Hainault (Haino) merchant Patricians in the Baltic Sea area was the sacking of the Visby by Danish King Waldemar II Atterdag which led to the formation of "Die Hanse" as previously mentioned.

The second serious attack was made against "Die Hanse" by Erich of Pomerania who was the King of the Kalmar Union, and who in his greedy fantasies attempted to create the so called "dominium mares Baltici" .

Then there were other local episodes such as the destruction of the trading post in "Novgorod" and imprisoned there the "Die Hanse" merchants for high ransoms as we noted earlier.

All these attacks against the Heijno (Hainault – Haino) merchant Patricians weren't anything new for them, because they had gone through many difficult times before such as the sacking of Bruges etc. etc. In most cases the merchant Patricians just had to re-route their trading routes as was with the case with Ivan III of Novgorod, but the totally unexpected and unjustified attack against them by Gustavus Wasa was of a more serious nature. He invited the Dutch and English merchants, who at that time were still members of "Die Hanse", to compete against their benefactors, was sowing a seed of discontent among the merchants, especially as he himself owed the merchant Patricians for helping him to become the King of Sweden, this in my opinion was "below the belt"...

No wonder that later the Heijno (Hainault – Haino) merchant Patricians sided with their long time rivals, the Danes, against the treacherous Swedish Kings.

With his betrayal Gustavus Wasa created a situation whereby many rulers began to realize that commerce was a lucrative source of taxation money for them, especially as it brought prosperity for the people whom they could also tax, and therefore they started to regulate the "despised commoners'" activities.

When Gustavus Wasa died in September 1560 A.D. his eldest son Erich became the King of Sweden as Erich XIV Wasa, who was even more favourable toward England than his father, he even made marriage proposals to Queen Elizabeth I and Mary Queen of Scots. However, being of a very unstable character, he finally married a commoner, Karin Magnusson's daughter, which antagonized Swedish nobility. Due to King Erich's strong support for the English and Dutch merchants, Sweden was attacked by the King of Denmark and Norway, with the support of "Die Hanse" Patricians. Right from the beginning of the said war which lasted seven years the Danes occupied Alvsborg fortress, which was Sweden's sole port to the North Sea, and in that way cut off Sweden's trade with the English and Dutch merchants. At that time Sweden was also at war against Poland, therefore King Erich needed Moscow's support to wage his war against the Danes and "Die Hanse", to open up the trade for English and Dutch merchants whom the Danes and "Die Hanse" Patricians considered as outsiders, because they didn't belong to the Baltic Sea nations.

The war against Poland didn't last very long because King Erich's brother Johan married Catherine Jagellonica, the sister of King Sigmund of Poland, therefore the relations between Sweden and Poland became much friendlier and the war was discontinued.

However, the marriage soured the relations between Sweden and Ivan IV The Terrible, because he had also been courting Catherine Jagellonica who chose Duke Johan, and this angered Ivan IV. In the renewal of the peace treaty between Sweden and Moscow in 1567 A.D. Sweden's rights in northern Viro (Estonia) were confirmed as Ivan IV needed peace in the north while he was conquering the southern Islamic states. However, as a setback for King Erich's economical policies to prevent Danish and "Die Hanse" merchants trading rights in the Baltic Sea area, to help English and Dutch merchants, the rights of "Die Hanse" in Narva was confirmed. There was also a very peculiar paragraph in the renewed treaty whereby Sweden was to deliver Duke Johan's wife Catherine Jagellonica to Russia. As the condition of the said treaty became known in Sweden King Erich was deposed from the throne, and his brother was elected as King Johan III of Sweden sometime in 1568 A.D.

It has been pointed out that around the time Ivan IV The Terrible was waging war against the southern (Muslim) principalities to consolidate his power in the south and to bring them into one Russian Empire, he had to yield to the Swedes to a certain degree. In my opinion, Ivan IV must have been very knowledgeable man, because according to many history books, he invited English merchants to trade in Novgorod, but according to the renewal of the peace treaty with Sweden he set a condition that the "Die Hanse" merchant Patricians would have unhindered trading rights in Narva. This according to my understanding clearly points to the fact that Ivan IV the Terrible was well aware that the so-called English merchants were in reality the same as "Die Hanse". It was about 20 years later as Queen Elizabeth I terminated unilaterally the Hanse Patricians' trading rights in England to reward English merchants for their help to defeat the Spanish Armada in 1588 A.D.

The hostility between the two rulers, Ivan IV of Russia and King John III of Sweden, helped "Die Hanse" Patricians and Danish merchants who considered the Baltic Sea trade as being the matter of the nations who were connected with the area, and therefore tried to protect their rights against outside intruders, when at the same time, the two rulers did everything to antagonize each other. A very good example of this was, "As Ivan IV The Terrible sent a delegate to Stockholm in the winter of 1568 A.D. – 1569 A.D. to escort Catherine Jagellonica to Moscow, as was agreed with King Erich XIV who had imprisoned her, his brother Johan III who, at that time,, was already the King of Sweden, imprisoned said delegates, because Catherine Jagellonica was his wife. In retaliation Ivan IV imprisoned the Swedish delegates who were sent to Moscow for border negotiations".

We have to understand that at that time the so-called diplomatic immunity was an unknown courtesy. I also want to mention that in the historical archives of Sweden there are letters proving the hostile correspondence of these two suitors.

As Johan III died at the end of 1592 A.D. his young son Sigismund who was already the King of Poland had strong support in Sweden because he was from the Wasa family. However, Duke Karl, who was Gustavus Wasa's youngest son, had worked hard to succeed his brother Johan III, and because his nephew Sigismund was already the King of Poland, and was a Catholic, Duke Karl was able to convince the Swedish upper classes that he was a Lutheran he would make a better King in the Protestant country. He also pointed out that because Sigismund was the King of Poland he wouldn't want to live in Sweden, and that Sigismund had made already known. The battle for Swedish crown lasted until 1599 A.D. when Duke Karl was elected as the Caretaker of the Swedish Government, and in 1604 A.D. he started to use the title of the King of Sweden, though officially he was crowned in 1607 A.D. in Uppsala as Karl IX.

As soon as Karl IX had consolidated his power he began to improve the country's economy by northern development, especially in the northern parts of Eastland (Finland) all the way to the Barren Sea. At that time Norway was ruled by the Danish King, and because the borders in the north were very nebulous, where even Russia had staked large areas for taxation purposes, the activities of Karl IX didn't please the Danes, therefore they started counter actions against Sweden by occupying again the Alvsborg fortress and its port.

The Alvsborg fortress and its ports were occupied by the Danes during their war against Sweden at the time of King Erich XIV to block Sweden's access to the North Sea, and was purchased back by Sweden two years after the King Erich XIV was deposed from Swedish throne by his brother Johan III, for a high price, which was equivalent to two years of tax income from Finland (Eastland). This time the ransom for Alvsborg was seven folds higher because the Danes were still dreaming of the lucrative times of the Kalmar Union, and tried to slow down Sweden's economy to be able to take Sweden.

We have to remember that at that time Denmark was still stronger than Sweden, especially as Sweden was involved in the war against Russia.

The Danes also knew that Luebeck's Heijno (Hainault – Haino) Patricians wouldn't help King Karl IX because of his constant support of English and Dutch merchants, and of his attempts to force the Eastland's (Finland)merchants to divert their trade through Stockholm instead of Luebeck, to have full control of their trade for taxation purposes.

Then, when King Karl IX died on October 30, 1611 A.D. his son Gustavus II Adolph, who was 17 years of age, succeeded his father. But because of Sweden's constitution the King had to be 18 years of age, a Caretaker had to be appointed to take care of the government. However, because Sweden was at that time in a very deep crises due to King Karl's wars against the Danes and Russia, which were caused by his megalomaniacal fantasies to control the whole northern trade. And then as Polish King Sigismund began also to claim the Sweden's Crown, the Swedish upper classes decided to dedare Gustavus II Adolph as being of a mature age to become the King of Sweden. All these events benefitted the Luebeck's Hanse Patricians, especially as Sweden's young King terminated his father's fantasies of northern development and the support of the English and Dutch merchants.

In the meantime Queen Elizabeth I had terminated the centuries old trading privileges of the Heijno (Hainault – Haino) merchant Patricians, this act encouraged many central European merchants to compete against "Die Hanse" with complete disregard that at difficult times "Die Hanse" had given them protection against the greedy rulers.

There are many books about “Die Hanse” or “Hansa” written by people who claim to be “historians”, but most of them, in my opinion, in their ignorance, have omitted the courageous pioneering of the Germanic merchants in the Baltic Sea area which was the main source of their wealth and power. These “historians” have also totally ignored the volatile and brutal times which existed in those days. They have constantly blamed the Hanse for all the ills in the world with complete disregard that none of the other merchants dared to challenge the greedy rulers, nor had the courage to explore new possibilities for trading activities in areas where strangers were shunned, and in many cases killed without any questions because the local people had bad experiences with slave traders from the south. As has been said by many people, “the facts of history depend on who is writing and for whom it is written”.

We have to remember that as Gustavus II Adolph ascended to the Swedish throne, he inherited his father’s wars against the Danes and Russians and almost bankrupted Sweden’s economy, therefore the young King had to establish his priorities.

First he made peace with the Danes at Knaered in 1613 where he was forced to pay high ransoms to regain the ownership of Alvsborg fortress and its port.

Then Gustavus II Adolph made peace with the Russians in 1617 A. D. where Romanov was elected as the Czar (Emperor) of Russia. In this peace treaty he gave back to the Russians the large Duchy of Novgorod for a very reasonable price in the peace treaty of Stolbova. He also agreed to permit free trade which was a great help to “Die Hanse” because Sweden was a big exporter of timber, copper, iron and tar which were exported mainly by “Die Hanse”. At that time tar and pitch were very important commodities because the wooden ships used them as “preservatives”.

After Gustavus II Adolph had made peace with the Danes and the Russians, he attacked Poland in 1617 A.D. where his cousin Sigismund was the King and who still insisted that he was the King of Sweden. This war lasted about two years, and in 1618 A.D. Sweden and Poland made armistice, after which the hostilities were renewed.

We have to remember that at that time Poland was the biggest state in central and eastern Europe, but because it was sort of a state of nobility where Polish nobility ruled many non-Polish principalities such as the Germanic Bohemia, Moravia, Schwabia etc. As Dukes and Kings who considered the hostilities between Gustavus II Adolph and his cousin Sigismund as a family affair, they weren’t too anxious to get involved into a family quarrel, especially as at that time, the Reformation was a hot topic.

In the meantime King Gustavus II Adolph had legislated in Sweden and in Eastland (Finland) that the churches had to keep records of all male congregation members who were 15 years of age and older for military drafts. He also legislated that every person of 15 years of age and older had to pay income taxes to increase the government’s income. This enabled him to assemble an army of 18000 men to fight the Poles.

However, the Reformation had reached its climax, and in May 1618 A.D. King Ferdinand of Bohemia, who was a staunch supporter of the Jesuits, ordered the Protestant churches to be closed in his country, and sent two overseers to Prague. This action didn’t please the people of Bohemia who were predominantly of Germanic origin, and as such, strong supporters of Lutheranism. They refused to close their churches and threw King Ferdinand’s overseers out from the Hardcany Castle’s window on May 23, 1618 A.D. This event is considered to be the beginning of the 30 Years’ War.

Though the event started the war elsewhere in Germany, Sweden didn't participate in it until 1630 A.D. At that time Sweden mobilized an army of 38500 men including 8500 cavalry men in which were the then well-known Finnish "Hakkapeliitta" The name "Hakkapeliitta" was derived from their war cry. Some of the historians claim that their war cry was "Hakkaa paealle", and some of them say that it was "Hakkaa pelotta", the first ones are trying to imply that they were fearless and heroic men whom they project as "super humans", and the latter ones are trying to tell that the young men needed encouragement because many of them were 15 – 17 years of age, inexperienced farmers' sons, and this points to the fact that many northern marauders (for instance the Vikings) had to work themselves up to a frenzy, even to the point of becoming "berserk" to have the courage to fight as madmen. The Swedish government felt that their 38500 men strong army wasn't enough, especially, as they wanted the war to be waged outside of the Baltic Sea area, and therefore recruited an additional army of 33000 foreign mercenaries, and joined the 30 Years' War in 1630 A.D. In 1632 A.D. on the 6th of November Gustavus II Adolph died in action in Luetzen.

At the time as Gustavus II Adolph was fighting his cousin Sigismund the King of Poland, he had appointed Axel Oxenstierna to act as the Caretaker of the Swedish government during his absence. Now as he had entered the 30 Years' War, and had at time, what was a huge army, he sent letters to his Caretaker complaining that because he didn't have enough money his army had to rob even their friends to survive. Therefore he had set norms for the regiments which area they were entitled to rob, and how the spoils of war had to be divided.

I believe that "Die Hanse" and the principality of Holstein must have made a deal with Gustavus II Adolph because Luebeck and Holstein were practically untouched in comparison with Mecklenburg and Pomerania which both had lost 2/3rd of their populations. In said deal, I also believe that the merchant Patricians (Princes) must have agreed to feed his army as long as they were in their area, and in return Gustavus II Adolph must have given the Patricians guarantees for free trade in the Baltic area, which at that time was controlled by Sweden with the exception of Denmark.

After Gustavus II Adolph died his daughter Christina was the heir to the throne of Sweden.

Queen Christina was a very bright person who spoke several languages, and who had been briefed by Axel Oxenstierna at the age of 12 years old in the workings of the government.

During her reign the 30 Years' War ended in 1648 A.D.

There are many accounts written about the 30 Years' War which had devastated the whole of central Europe to the point that the losses among German population averaged about 30% of the then population. The biggest losses were suffered by Bavaria, Pfalz, Mecklenburg and Pomerania which lost over 2/3rd of their populations.

Queen Christina was more interested in bringing cultural life and civility to Sweden than to be involved in conquests. During her reign the Hanse merchant Patricians (Princes) had fairly free hands to consolidate their trading activities in the Baltic Sea area. In 1654 A.D. Queen Christina abdicated and was succeeded by her cousin Karl Gustav.

King Karl X Gustav was constantly fighting wars, and as he had suffered few setbacks in Poland, Czar Alexei of Russia decided to attack Sweden in June 1656 A.D. to reclaim parts of Ingermanland to have a sea port in the Baltic Sea area. This encouraged Denmark, to start also with the help of Holland, a war against Sweden. However, King Karl X Gustav was able to defeat them both with the exception of Copenhagen, and as he attacked Norway in February 1660 A.D. he fell sick of pneumonia and died at the age of 37 years old.

This left Sweden without a king as his son Karl who was the heir to the throne was only 4 years old, and therefore Sweden was forced again to appoint a Caretaker Government under the leadership of Chancellor Magnus Gabriel de la Gardie.

Considering all the losses of human lives in the 30 Years' War, we have to agree, that economical losses were enormous, and therefore as the last get together of "Die Hanse" held in 1669 A.D. in Luebeck, only nine member cities participated.

The Caretaker Government in Sweden tried to solve Sweden's problems by diplomatic means, but because it had a mutual defence agreement with France, it was forced to send an army in 1674 A.D. against Brandenburg. The army suffered a defeat which encouraged Holland, German Emperor and Denmark to declare a war against Sweden. In the meantime Karl XI became the King of Sweden at the age of 17 years old. In the war Sweden lost most of its holdings in Germany with the exception of a few areas in For-Pommern.

Europe wide peace treaties were signed in the years 1678 A.D. – 1679 A.D. and Karl XI concentrated in improving Sweden's economy, and governing methods by introducing the King's autocratic powers which led to a peaceful time after a long period of wars.

This peaceful time was very beneficial especially for Luebeck and Holland who had seaworthy merchant ships in the Baltic Sea.

King Karl XI died of cancer on April 5, 1697 A.D. and his son Karl who was 15 years old became of mature age "overnight", and was declared the King of Sweden as Karl XII. Due to King Karl's young age Sweden's enemies formed an alliance and attacked Sweden. We have to remember that at that time Germany was split into some 300 Principalities and City States. Poland sent an army to Livland (Livonia) but was forced to withdraw. Then Denmark attacked Holstein which was allied with Sweden, and was repelled by King Karl XII. After that Peter I of Russia attacked Narva through Ingermanland and was defeated by Sweden's army in 1700 A.D.

After these victories Karl XII attacked Poland because it was a threat to Sweden's hegemony in the Baltic Sea area. This gave time for Peter I The Great of Russia to assemble a strong army, and on July 28, 1709 A.D. he defeated King Karl's army in Poltava. However, King Karl XII escaped to Turkey by crossing the river Dniepr with 1000 of his men. This was beginning of the end of Sweden's greatness. When King Karl XII came back to Sweden he decided to conquer Norway before attacking Russia, but died from single bullet to his head while inspecting the fortress of Fredricsten on November 30, 1718 A.D.

In the meantime in early 18th century Peter I The Great of Russia who had earlier visited northern Europe including Brandenburg, Luebeck and Holland's shipyards to learn how to build seaworthy ships, and it was pointed out by the ruler of Brandenburg that as Sweden occupied all the countries around the Baltic Sea except Denmark, it was detrimental to Russia's trade. Therefore Peter I The Great conquered the Baltic Sea area and eastern part of Eastland (Finland) including Viborg (Viipuri), because Russia needed sea ports especially as Turkey controlled the Bosphorus strait.

All this was a great help to Luebeck's merchant Patricians especially as after the death of Peter The Great, his daughter Elisabeth became the Empress of Russia in December 1741 A.D.

In June 1742 A.D. Russia attacked Sweden, and because Sweden lost the war Empress Elisabeth practically forced Sweden to elect her relative Adolf Fredrick the Prince Bishop of Luebeck, who had a ducal rank, to become the King of Sweden as Adolf I.

After this war Sweden accused the Commander of Sweden's army in Finland, Baron von Buddenbrock together with Marshal Lewenhaupt of treason, found them guilty and executed them.

Could this Buddenbrock have been the same Buddenbrook whose name Thomas Mann used with a slight alteration in his *The Buddenbrooks* saga?

According to historical accounts Empress Elisabeth of Russia who had a son, Peter, whom she made to marry Princess Sophie of Anhalt-Zerbst, but because she wasn't of Russian Orthodox Faith, she had to be re-baptized, and to change her name to Catherine (in Russian Ekaterina).

After Empress Elisabeth died her son Peter became Russia's Czar as Peter III, but his tenure lasted only few years, and he died in 1762 A.D. and Catherine became the Empress of Russia as Catherine II.

She was a very skilful ruler and because her mother Princess Johanna of Holstein, which was owned and ruled by the Heijno (Hainault – Haino) Dynasty, Catherine II was very familiar with the benefits of commercial activities for the nations. Therefore she legislated, among many other things, a free trade, to help the Russian merchants against foreign exploiters, for which she is credited in history books.

This must be one of the reasons why she is known today as Catherine the Great. The Heijno (Hainault – Haino) merchant Patricians trading privileges were further strengthened as Catherine II The Great became the Empress of Russia in 1762 A.D. and her cousin Gustavus III, the son of Adolf I, became the King of Sweden after his father's death.

And then began the French Revolution.

CHAPTER XXIV

In the sixteenth century came the Protestant Reformation which was followed by the 30 Years' War. The 30 Years' War is said to have been the most cruel and bloodiest war ever fought on European soil. It was a war in which human emotions such as hate, and religious fanaticism added to greed and jealousies, dictated human actions.

The 30 Years' War changed the whole economical structure especially in northern and central Europe where about 30% of the then population was annihilated. We have to keep in mind that the Catholic Church prohibited money lending because it considered interest charges as usury. However, the Jewish money lenders, which were excepted from said prohibition and were free to charge any interest they pleased which according to many history books varied from forty to sixty per cent. These were the money lenders which Shakespeare called "Shylocks" in his story of the "Merchant of Venice".

The Protestant Churches permitted the interest charges, and that led to the fact that more industrious people were able to obtain loans at more reasonable rates. The banks began to prosper and three more classes were formed, namely the bankers, the industrialists and the workers whom later Karl Marx called proletariat, or the slaves of labour. This led to the so-called industrial revolution. Though one may think that this would have an adverse affect on the wealthy merchants, but it did not, because the merchants were able to obtain many manufactured goods from their own cities' industrialists, who bought their raw materials through the merchants. In other words, the merchants who owned the ships and had trading posts abroad were able to profit even more.

This was the situation on the eve of the French Revolution.

There were many factors which contributed to the revolutionary uprising in France. However, the main reasons have never been clearly defined and because Queen Marie Antoinette's notorious words "Let them eat cakes", doesn't sound to me very convincing, especially as there is no proof that she had uttered said words, therefore I want to mention few of the facts which might have been the main reasons.

1. In 1774 A.D. twenty years old Louis XVI, who was a spoiled brat, became the King of France and married 19 years old Marie Antoinette of Austria, and both according to my understanding were more interested in luxurious living than in the state of the government's finances.
2. Catholic Church was still very powerful in France because the Protestant Reformation didn't get a firm hold in any noticeable measure, therefore the Church Prelates were still jockeying for power against the government and the King.
3. The agriculture was suffering great setbacks. According to the "Guinness Book of Amazing Nature"; "El Nino caused devastating Crop failure in 1787 A.D. – 1788 A.D. which produced wide spread unrest in France". The book also suggests that; "This triggered the French Revolution".

In any event, France, like all European countries, was still predominantly agricultural. The farmers were heavily taxed and there was hunger in the country, and dissatisfaction spread like a brush fire. By using the philosophy of Voltaire "Liberty, Equality and Fraternity" the demagogues which consisted of atheists, supremacists, misfits, fanatical social climbers and criminals, all who coveted the riches of the upper classes, incited the hungry mobs by telling them that once you take the riches from the rich, especially the jewels from the King and the Queen you will become rich. This led to an unhindered murdering and plundering regardless that Voltaire had warned that "People who believe in absurdities will eventually commit atrocities".

In those days the executions to behead the victims were carried out by a sword or a battle axe, and in many cases the executioners were so drunk that it took them several attempts to sever the head. Therefore, for humanitarian reasons, Mr J.I. Guillotine invented his killing machine called "Madam Guillotine", which made the beheading less painful for the victim and it also sped up the murdering. The King and the Queen were guillotined. The nobility, the merchants, the bankers and other rich people were robbed and suffered the same fate as the King and the Queen. The churches were sacked and the parliament declared that God is dead. Finally even most of the Revolution's original perpetrators were also guillotined or murdered.

According to the history books the main "players" in the Revolution were Robespierre and a lawyer called Marat, both were misfits. Robespierre was dissatisfied aristocrat who was guillotined in 1794 A.D. and Marat who was born in Switzerland, and therefore didn't care about the French people, was assassinated in 1793 A.D. by Charlotte Corday, a Girondist. As the murdering went on unhindered, the French people started to get fed up of the lawlessness, especially as their lot didn't improve. At that time, Napoleon Bonaparte, who wasn't even French, but a Corsican, who had always hated the French, saw his opportunity to seize the power.

Under the above circumstances Napoleon Bonaparte and his revolutionary henchmen were able to grab the power in France. To satisfy his own megalomaniacal ego Napoleon elevated his revolutionary "lieutenants" to the rank of Marshals and Admirals, most of whom didn't qualify as military strategists, but were just plain greedy robbers, traitors and murderers who happened to be lucky that most of Europe was, at that time, split into small City States and Principalities.

Finally Napoleon crowned himself as the Emperor of France in 1804 A.D. regardless that Napoleon and his cohorts, as revolutionaries, had shouted loudly on barricades "Down with the Monarchy". Napoleon even elevated his brothers to the rank of Kings. One of his "Marshals" became the King of Sweden and another one the King of Naples. In fact Napoleon was the biggest and bloodiest "capo di tutti capi" of all times, and his "Marshals" and "Admirals" were his crime family's "lieutenants". His methods were later used by Garibaldi to unite Italy.

As Napoleon took the title of Consul General of France he realized that France was in bankruptcy therefore he started to look abroad to conquer the rich neighbours, which idea also gave him the French peoples' support. He must have read Nicole Machiavelli's book "The Prince" to learn how to conquer and get the badly needed money to finance France's economy and to fulfill his dream of becoming the Emperor of Europe.

By planting revolutionary ideas of "Liberty, Equality and Fraternity" into his neighbouring countries, and promising to create a classless society he was able to conquer the small States and Principalities of Italy, Spain and Germany. We have to remember, that at that time, Italy was split into several States, Germany consisted of about 300 Principalities and small City States, and Spain didn't have any strong central government, so all the small entities were easy prey for Napoleon.

Italy was the first one to experience Napoleon's greed. The most coveted prize for Napoleon was Venice, because it was the home of the Venetian merchant Patricians who were world-wide known for their riches and power. What happened in Venice you may read from the book "Ghost of Rialto" by Daniele Vare. From this book there was an excerpt published in the autumn issue of "Cornhill Magazine" in 1951 where it was described how enthusiastically most of the Venetians welcomed the French liberators and how short lived this enthusiasm was, "All too soon the people realized that the French weren't liberators but despoilers, who ransacked their granaries, their libraries and their palaces. The four horses of San Marco were taken to the Louvre and the jewels and diamonds from San Marco's Cathedral's treasury were set in Josephine's crown."

The same kind of extortion and plundering was going on throughout Italy, Spain and Germany. To get a faint idea of what was going on in Germany you have to read the book "Chronicles of Three Free Cities" written by Wilson King, one time Consul of the United States at Bremen and published by J.M. Dent & Sons Ltd. London and by E.P. Dutton & Co. New York 1914.

You may also read from several historical accounts that, "On January 4, 1798 the three Hanse Cities were notified by the French Government that, to show their appreciation of French friendship they were allowed to pay 18.000.000.- francs at once, Luebeck, 4.000.000.- francs, Hamburg and Bremen each 7.000.000.- francs. Then, as the money hadn't been paid by February 15 the same year, the French Government ordered the Hanse Ambassador to leave France. Only because of the Hanse Ambassador's promise that the Hanse Cities would pay 12.000.000.- francs, which promise was supported by Hamburg's payment of 4.000.000.- francs, the French Government was pacified and agreed to guarantee the commercial and political existence of the said Hanse Cities. However, in 1803 the French Government demanded again a heavy tribute which was paid by the Hanse Cities.

And then after the French victory at Jena on November 6, 1806 A.D., Bernadotte, Soult and Murat under the leadership of Marshal Bernadotte attacked the peace loving, defenceless Free Imperial City State of Luebeck through its three gates, thus preventing any one to escape the coming horror. As soon as they had entered the City Marshal Bernadotte gave the City to his soldiers' fury, greed and lust.

The houses were ransacked, old women, men and boys even in their infancy were murdered, pregnant women's stomachs were slashed with the sword to make sure that they wouldn't give birth to male descendants and young women even young girls were raped again and again and finally thrown into the gutters to die, so that even the battle hardened French Officers such as General Pelleport, Colonel Laffite of the 18th Dragons, Colonel Vigo Roussillon and others were horrified, and wrote in their letters and their memoirs that they couldn't understand why peace loving merchants' City was put through such animalistic brutality, and carnage, considering that its inhabitants didn't have anything to do with the war. In their memoirs and letters they speak of how the streets were full of corpses, and how the paving stones were dyed by blood because of the thousands of horrors, murders, rapes etc. etc., committed by the French.

Later a publication ban was declared on Madam Countess De Villers written account concerning Marshal Jean Baptiste Bernadotte's devilish brutality in Luebeck, and copies were destroyed.

The only striking similar massacre of a whole ruling family maybe read in the history of the Hasmonean Dynasty when Herod the Great murdered all members of the Hasmonean Dynasty to become the King of the Jews.

Later in early 20th century Lenin used the same tactics in Russia by closing the borders that "the vermin wouldn't be able to escape".

It is also said that "great Moltke who at that time, as a child was living in his father's house in Luebeck, could never forget the scenes of horror and that General Scharnhorst wrote, that those accustomed to the horrors of war had rarely, if ever, seen such excesses among mankind.

After three days' non-stop of carnage Bernadotte put a stop to the sacking of the city, famine shortly followed and there was intense suffering. Hamburg, though herself in great straits, sent large supplies of food".

Why didn't Marshal Bernadotte stop such bloodshed earlier because he had power to do so?

This is a justifiable question, because he was fully aware of the said atrocities.

"The French continued to occupy Luebeck, causing great sufferings and extorting large sums of money. Bernadotte himself "accepted" 100.000.- francs, two of his generals each "accepted" 50.000.- francs. All of the military secretaries and aids "graciously received" large sums in addition to 5000.- francs daily allowances which the City was compelled to pay for officers table money.

All English made goods in the City were confiscated which amounted in value to more than 2.000.000.- francs, many of which were publicly burned. As the City was in the depth of poverty, it was compelled to sell all the magnificent artistic plates for which it had been famous. More than 6000 ounces of historic table decorations were thus disposed for the mere value of the metal, and the famous wines in the "Ratskeller" were sacrificed".

After Luebeck was attacked on the 6th of November 1806 A.D. on the 19th of the same month Hamburg was occupied, and on the 20th of that month Bremen was conquered by the French Army.

Bremen, though an ally of France, which had paid large sums to prove its friendship was occupied by Colonel Clements who treated it as a conquered city. Money and arms were searched for, and when found, taken. Never before in its long history had it been so plundered. General St. Cyr, who was the Commander in Bremen, ruled the City with terror. The City and its neighbourhood were denuded of provisions, and every effort was made to extract all the money and valuables from the people and General van Damme averred that he would leave them nothing but their eyes to weep with. The executions of patriotic people who breached the French Special Laws were daily occurrences. The township of Lillienthal and Lesum were burned.

"Though Hamburg was taken by the French on the 19th of November 1806 A.D. Bernadotte, who had become the Governor of the Hanse Cities, arrived in Hamburg on the 7th of July 1807 A.D. immediately he ordered the City to pay the sum of 16.000.000.- francs. One quarter of that sum at once and rest in monthly instalments of 2.000.000.- francs each

On February 20, 1813 A.D. there was a premature uprising against the French occupation, which didn't succeed, and on the 30th of the following May Davoust was able to reoccupy Luebeck. An estimated of 6.000.000.- francs was demanded, five thousand troops were quartered in the City and over sixty prominent men were carried off as hostages. After that Davoust reoccupied also Hamburg and commanded a general illumination in the City. Any window without a light was smashed and its owner fined. Next day the French arms again appeared on the buildings and everything was once more French.

The City was ordered to pay a fine of 48.000.000.- francs within a month. An extra amount of 10.000.000.- was demanded for supplying a depot with provisions. Having drained the City dry of funds Davoust seized the Bank of Hamburg and confiscated all its cash, books and documents, he got about 7.500.000,- marks. It has been estimated that the money losses of the City of Hamburg during the period from 1806 A.D. to 1814 A.D. amounted to about 185.000.000.- marks, private individuals' losses not included.

During that time Davoust started to build an earthwork around Hamburg for which he seized and transported from Luebeck about six hundred citizens to work as slave labourers".

The same kind of extortion, murdering and forced labour was going on throughout the Germany, Italy and Spain, and on the top of all this, young men were by force conscripted into Napoleon's Army. We should not forget that at that time these countries were split into small kingdoms, free city states and principalities, people didn't have any nationalistic feelings, and most people were illiterate and envied the rich and powerful. Therefore it was very easy task for Napoleon and his cohorts to plant ideas of liberty, equality and fraternity.

Regardless that the Hanse Cities paid enormous amounts of "friendship money" to pacify the French, Napoleon and his thugs broke all their promises to leave the Hanse Cities alone, invaded the cities, plundered, looted, raped and murdered at their will.

Immense sums of money, jewels and other valuables, such as paintings, gold, statuettes, furniture and other pieces of art were plundered and extorted, and those who dared to resist were simply murdered. In his book "Chronicles of Three Free Cities" Mr. Wilson King gives few accounts of the sums which were extorted from the Cities and banks of the three free Hanse Cities, Bremen, Hamburg and Luebeck, without mentioning how much was robbed from individual merchants, bankers, nobles, industrialists, churches and private citizens. If you consider that there were about 200 member cities and principalities in the Hanse, which were practically ruled by the Hanse Dynasty, and add to this all other kingdoms and principalities in Germany, Italy and Spain including the wealth of the churches, the amount which were robbed during the Napoleonic Wars would reach astronomical figures. If you convert said figures into today's currencies you would arrive at an unimaginable mind boggling sum. Just imagine that if someone would have, in our times, exclusive rights on anything, how much wealth would one be able to accumulate during a lifetime?

Yet, the Hanse merchant Patricians of Luebeck and the Italian merchant Patricians of Rome, Venice, Pisa and Florence dominated the commercial life of the whole Europe for unaccountable centuries, for which they had paid high prices, not only to the local rulers, but also with lost lives while pioneering the whole commerce in Europe and in the Middle East and Far East, and now Napoleon with his "criminal gang" robbed and destroyed the work of many millenniums.

I often wondered how it was possible for a "Corsican criminal" and "his thugs" to find out from whom and how much they could extort for their criminal activities? After I read a book called "Bernadotte, Napoleon's Marshal – King of Sweden" written by Alan Palmer, and the book written by Joergen Weibull, "Swedish History in Outline" many things became clear to me. We also have to take into consideration that Bernadotte wasn't his family's original name because his ancestors changed their family name in the 17th century from "Deu Pouey or Deu Pooeu" to Bernadotte.

In this book Alan Palmer tells that JEAN Batiste Jules Bernadotte was born in Pau, a small town in the Pyrenees. His father was a small time lawyer who died when Jean Batiste was in his teens, and the family lived in poverty. As a young man he joined King's Army as a non-commissioned officer, and for awhile was stationed in Corsica where he met Napoleon Bonaparte.

From the same Alan Palmer's book you may also read that at one time Bernadotte participated in a coup d'état against Napoleon and had to "hide" for a while. After reading the book I didn't get the impression that Bernadotte was a military genius which would have entitled him to become a Marshal. The book also explains how money was extracted from the merchants of Hannover.

The information in the Alan Palmer's book aroused many questions in my mind for example; why was Bernadotte elevated by Napoleon to the rank of Marshal?

Why didn't Napoleon execute Bernadotte for his participation in a coup d'état against him?

Why Napoleon assigned Bernadotte in 1807 A.D. to be the Governor of the Hanse Cities?

Why was he "elected" to become the King of Sweden? And so on.

In the book "Swedish history in Outline", Mr. Joergen Weibull mentions that "As soon as Bernadotte became the Crown Prince of Sweden he betrayed Napoleon and turned against him and that Bernadotte was never popular with his subjects".

In my opinion it is not surprising that Bernadotte wasn't popular among Swedes, because Swedes are predominantly Lutheran who revered their former King Gustavus II Adolph, a staunch Protestant hero of the 30 Years' War, and Bernadotte was officially Catholic who didn't speak Swedish.

In the same book Mr. Joergen Weibull points out that the "Francophile Party" in Sweden forced their choice, Marshal Jean Batiste Bernadotte, a lawyer's son from Pau in the Pyrenees to be elected as the Crown Prince of Sweden, in my opinion, they may have hoped that Sweden would get Napoleon's support in their aspiration to regain control of Finland which they had lost to Russia in the war of 1804. However, as Bernadotte became the Crown Prince of Sweden he betrayed not only Napoleon, but also the Swedish Francophiles who had caused his election.

I also read from a book that Napoleon was very surprised when he heard that Bernadotte was elected to become the Crown Prince of Sweden.

Another peculiarity of the said case was that the so-called "Francophile Party" which had caused the election of Bernadotte, must have known that Napoleon, and his thugs were revolutionary bunch. They also must have known that "Napoleon was anti-aristocracy, anti-Jacobin, was fearful of "common people", heaped honours on his family and friends, re-established slavery, and re-introduced some of the most hated arbitrary features of the old regime" as was pointed out by D.M>G. Sutherland.

In my opinion the selection of Bernadotte doesn't make any sense, because one would imagine that the Swedes would have laid great weight in qualities of strict morals, and sound judgement for their future King.

Another informative book about Bernadotte is "Bernadotte, Prince and King" by Sir D.F. Barton.

We have to remember that among every race, nationality and society of men there are always traitors and atheists who are ready to "sell even their own mother" to gain benefits for themselves. Neither should we forget that the worst atrocities have been committed by cowards, who, due to their own inferiority complex have tried to prove that they are tough and fearless. Of these we have very good examples such as Napoleon, Bernadotte, Lenin, Stalin, Hitler etc.

As Bernadotte "orchestrated" the massacre of Luebeck he made sure that nobody would be able to escape. The same method was later used by Lenin who ordered the borders to be closed that the "vermin" wouldn't be able to escape. Then as Bernadotte became the King of Sweden, he attacked Norway, which wasn't any match to Sweden because it was, population wise, smallest of Fenno-Scandian countries.

Was Bernadotte afraid that in Bergen would have been some of the Heijno (Hainault-Haino) merchant Patricians who would have been able to lay a claim on Sweden's throne? At that time Bernadotte must have been totally unaware that Gustav Johan Heijno had been sent by the family already in 1790 A.D. to Viborg (Viipuri), which at that time belonged to Russia, and because he had an ancient hereditary ducal rank and was a Hanse Patrician, he acted as Czar's (Emperor) Counsel (in German "Kommerzienrat", in Swedish "Commerçe Rad" and in old Finnish "Raatiemies") and therefore was under Czar's protection.

CHAPTER XXV

The Massacre of Luebeck which started on November 6, 1806 A.D. and lasted three days and three nights, according to the eyewitnesses' accounts, surpassed anything on the records. The devilish brutality of Marshal Jean Batiste Jules Bernadotte in the annihilation of the Heijno (Hainault-Haino) merchants Patricians also known as merchant Princes was mind boggling.

Yet somehow Bernadotte was able to manipulate the Swedes to elect him as the King of Sweden regardless that he wasn't of noble birth, but a poor son of a small time lawyer from Pau, a city in southern France near the Pyrenees, a fervent revolutionary, and according to some researches, that on his arm was a tattoo "Death to all Kings". No wonder that in a book it is said that even Napoleon was very surprised as he heard that Bernadotte was elected to be the Crown Prince of Sweden (even though according to some researchers Napoleon himself was shouting on the barricades "down with the Monarchy"). Therefore I find that there was something very sinister about the whole case, especially as according to my understanding of Swedish history, Sweden had elected, in the past, members and relatives of the Heijno (Hainault – Haino) family as their Kings, such as Albrecht of Mecklenburg, Kristoffer of Bavaria, Prince-Bishop of Luebeck Adolf Frederick who became King Adolf I Frederick who was related to Empress Elisabeth of Russia, the daughter of Peter I The Great etc.

Here I want to remind the readers that Luebeck was fairly small city surrounded by a city wall, it was owned and built by the Heijno (Hainault-Haino) merchant Patricians, and mainly populated by their own family members and by people who were related to the Patricians through marriages, and by people who were in one or another capacity employed by the family's commercial enterprise "Die Hanse" including the domestic servants. In fact Luebeck was like a castle in a bigger scale where everybody knew each other, and where non-residents were told to leave the city before the sundown before the city gates were closing.

Here I want to explain the social structure of the class society: Before the Reformation only those who belonged to the recognized classes had a voice in public affairs. In most of Europe there were three classes the nobility, the clergy and the tradesmen, and the rest of the people were considered as classless (commoners), after the Reformation three new classes were recognised, the bankers, the industrialists and the workers whom Karl Marx called proletariat (slaves of labour). In Fenno Scandia, the Baltic countries there weren't any classes, and all free men had equal right to be heard. Later, as the above said area was influenced by Central European attitudes four classes were recognized the nobility, clergy, tradesmen and farmers. After the Reformation the above mentioned three more classes were also included. In fact the French Revolution, and later the Karl Marx's hate propoganda didn't achieve anything except tens of millions of deaths (Russian Revolution included), because the Reformation had already started the social changes in Europe in 16th century.

To fully understand Bernadotte's murderous activities (crime against humanity) we have to look back into merchant Patricians' commercial activities.

Already in cuneiform tablet dated back to 3500 B.C. (or B.C.E. Before Christian Era), the rulers had to protect their merchant colonies against the marauding robber hordes.

There are many factors which have to be taken into consideration to get a faint idea of the ancient world such as the size of the world's population. The fact that for millenniums people lived in class societies, that most people were illiterate, that marriages were arranged by the parents, that boys were considered to be adults at the age of 13 or 14 years of age (I believe that for example the Jewish "Bar Mitzvah" originates from this tradition), that girls were considered to be ready for marriage after their first menstruation, and that there was no such thing as public education etc. etc. etc.

From all factors I came to the conclusion that for many millenniums the merchants were the only literate sector of the society with maybe some rare exceptions (for example, the cuneiform tablets are mainly inventories of goods and wares). Later, in biblical times the scribes were considered as a class of their own, but even as late as in medieval times many rulers were still illiterate. Considering that all trades and professions were learned at home from father to sons, all trades' secrets stayed within the families.

During the early Middle Ages as the merchants visited Londonium (London) they were named after the towns they came from. However, "De Institutis Londonie of Ethelred (978 A.D. – 1016 A.D.) referred to Hainault (Haino) merchants as "Homines Imperatoris qui veniebant in navibus suis" as was mentioned earlier.

We also have to keep in mind that in those days a merchant's profession was very gruelling and dangerous. Therefore many merchants' sons who were either physically or otherwise unable to embark on their father's profession, but because of their literacy skills and their ducal rank became either rulers, or rulers' advisors (Counsels) such as Emperor's Counsel in commercial matters.

We also have to consider that travelling to faraway trading posts could take a long time, even weeks. Therefore as merchants sent their sons with their families to trading posts to manage their trading activities, and to explore and expand new trading possibilities, their sons settled in said trading posts, in many cases, for several generations. Therefore they had to devise insignias, emblems and symbols to identify themselves to each other, because relatives were considered in those days, to be most reliable trading partners.

When did the merchants decide on the "six-petal-flower" design is unknown to us, because they never "advertised" any of their actions, nor did they reveal anything that was connected with their trading activities to strangers, because in those days it was too dangerous. Neither did they write down any vital information for the same reason, but delegated them by the word of mouth, and that way kept everything concerning their trade strictly within their families.

The first time I realized the significance of the "six-petal-flower" was as we came across an archaeological find of the said design, a mosaic design of 800 B.C.

Knowing that the "Hanse Rose" was also a "six-petal-flower" and having seen the same design on many buildings and items, even on some of the church Prelates' (Prince Bishops) chasubles, and some of the rulers garments, I came to the conclusion that following the trail of the said design, we may be able to find the truth about the Hainault-Haino merchant Princes' (Patricians) trading activities, because for some unexplainable reasons a great deal of their achievements have been either destroyed or downplayed, and besmirched in central and northern Europe and in Scandinavia.

Judging by the merchant Patricians trading operations in the Baltic Sea area, I understood that the same methods must have been used by the merchants for millenniums, especially considering that the Hainault (Haino) Counts had traced their origin to the City of Troy.

The ancestors of the said Patricians must have used the same mode of operations as they built the so called "Silk Road", which must have taken centuries to complete, because of its many trading posts and depots, the ruins of which are still under the desert sands as mentioned before, and as the excavations in Takla Makan desert have proved. We have to remember that the "Ice Age" affected also the northern parts of Asia and the Gobi Desert and Takla Makan, in eastern Kazakhstan, Uzbekistan and southern China, were lush and flourishing areas. Even the Bible researchers are inclined to place the Garden of Eden into the said general area.

Considering that in those days only a very small sector of population lived in towns or cities which had walls around them for peoples' protection, the group of "international" merchants, who had ducal rank, and who in many cases were related to the Emperors, Kings and Princes and were protected by them, was very small. Local merchants who didn't have protection experienced great difficulties because of the robbers, pirates and greedy local rulers. And regardless of said protection even the merchant Patricians (Princes) suffered many great losses, for instance, as the case of the city of Bruges (Bruegge) proved. Therefore I believe that because of the constant attacks by the greedy Flemish and "Normen" Dukes and Counts, the Hainault (Haino) merchant Patricians (Princes) were forced to establish in Holland another Hainault (Haino) County as a safe place for their families. Said county and its city they wrote in Roman alphabet as Heino, which in German and Dutch is pronounced as Latin Haino, of which the Bishop of Utrecht spoke in 1236 A.D. as was previously mentioned.

Then, as Lothar the Duke of Saxony started to reclaim the ancestral Germanic lands from the heathen Slavs, and his son Henry the Lion, who was married to the daughter of King Henry II of England (Plantagenet-Hainault -Haino), continued his father's annexations of the said Germanic lands, the Hainault (Haino) merchant Princes saw their opportunity to establish their trading headquarters in Luebeck, which they dubbed "Die Hanse". For this mercantile and maritime empire or enterprise they designated their six millenniums old "double-headed-eagle" as its international emblem.

Luebeck was an ideal location on the shores of the Baltic Sea from which they had a direct access to their important supplier, including "Russia".

During the centuries "Die Hanse" grew in power and might, at one time it was even called "the King makers and the King breakers". At its peak it had about 200 cities and principalities as its members. Its Headquarters or Head Office was in the Free Imperial City State of Luebeck, and the Heijno (Hainault-Haino) merchant Patricians (Princes) had close personal and commercial relations with the other four Free Imperial City States, Rome, Venice, Pisa and Florence. Especially with the Florence's Di Medici, who had an office in Bruges (Bruegge) and later also in Luebeck. "Die Hanse" had also had a depot in Venice called Fondaco dei Tedeschi.

After the Reformation and the 30 Years' War, the life in the area we know today as Germany, was very difficult because it had lost about 30% of its population. Therefore as "Die Hanse" had its "get-together" in 1669 A.D. which officially became the last such event, only nine Hanse cities participated (but Luebeck, Hamburg and Bremen retained their Free Hanse City status).

The French Revolution which started in 1789 A.D. didn't have any immediate effect on "Die Hanse" or their Baltic trade because Napoleon was too preoccupied with France's economy. Therefore the Hanse merchant Patricians in 1790 A.D. sent one of their young Patricians by the name of Gustav Johann Heijno to their trading post in Viborg (Viipuri) to manage their commercial activities in the eastern section of the Baltic area. At that time Viborg (Viipuri) belonged to Russia because it was annexed by Empress Elisabeth from Sweden in 1743 A.D. And in that war, the Commander of Sweden's army in Finland, Baron von Buddenbrock was executed for treason together with Marshal Lewenhaupt.

At the time as Gustav Johann Heijno settled in Viborg (Viipuri), Catherine II the Great was the Empress of Russia. She died six years later and her son Paul (Pavel Petrovich) became the Czar (Emperor) in 1796 A.D. His tenure as the Czar lasted about five years and in 1801 A.D. Alexander I became the Czar (Emperor) of Russia.

It is unknown to us which one of the said rulers invited Gustav Johann Heijno (Hainault-Haino) to be their Counsel (Advisor) in commercial matters, but I would imagine that it was Catherine II the Great, because according to the history books, she was very interested in commercial activities. She is even credited for creating free trade to help the Russian merchants because at that time the Swedish, Danish, Dutch and English merchants exploited the Russian merchants who didn't have seaworthy ships. Being of German origin and the first cousin of Gustavus III King of Sweden, the son of Adolf I Frederick ex-Prince Bishop of Luebeck, Empress Catherine II the Great was fully aware of her relatives the Heijno (Hainault-Haino) merchant Princes and their capabilities.

Therefore as Gustav Johann Heijno arrived in Viborg (Viipuri) which is about 80 miles (120 kilometres) from St. Petersburg, it is only logical to assume that she used the opportunity to have professional advice. And at the same time she was able to help also her relatives "Die Hanse" merchant Princes to challenge Swedish, Danish, Dutch and English merchants, who were "newcomers", in comparison with the Heijno (Hainault-Haino) Patricians whom they tried to rob of their rightful, centuries old trading relations.

After Napoleon had seized power in France and proclaimed to be the Consul General, he realized that France was in bankruptcy, and being a Corsican he knew that the Venetian Patricians were very rich, therefore he first attacked Venice to improve France's financial situation. But that wasn't enough, so he started to plant revolutionary ideas of Voltaire "Liberty, Equality and Fraternity" in to neighbouring countries, promising to create classless society. In this way to weaken the neighbouring countries' resistance, he conquered many small principalities and City States in Italy, Spain and Germany. On top of all that, before attacking, he demanded from them large sums of "friendship money", and after they had paid, he sent his Marshal Jean Batiste Bernadotte to find out, how much more said entities and their merchants were able to "fork out", after which he attacked them.

A very good example of this tactic was the case of the City of Hannover.

At first I couldn't understand how it was possible for Bernadotte, a poor lawyer's son, un-commissioned officer in King's army, turned revolutionary, and elevated by Napoleon to the rank of a Marshal to get said information? After reading Alan Palmer's book, "Bernadotte, Napoleon's Marshal, King of Sweden, and knowing that Napoleon also had given him a ducal rank of a tiny principality I realized that he must have used his titles for his own sinister ambitions. This must have also been the case as to how he knew how much the Free Imperial City States of Luebeck was worth, as he attacked the peace loving neutral Hanse City of Luebeck, and murdered there Heijno (Hainault-Haino) Dynasty with the exception of Gustav Johann Heijno, who was at that time in Viborg (Viipuri, Finland).

All the atrocities and extortions of Napoleon and his "criminal gang", as most of the European countries called them, didn't go unnoticed by Czar Alexander I Emperor of Russia (1801 A. D. – 1825 A. D.).

Therefore in 1808 A.D., to secure his northern flank, he attacked Sweden. Annexed the eastern part of Sweden, the so called Eastland (Finland), up to the Gulf of Botnia which he merged with the "old Finland" in 1812 A.D. and formed a semi autonomous buffer Duchy of Finland against possible attacks through Sweden.

As Bernadotte and his cohorts had finished their murderous rampage in 1806 A.D. in Luebeck, according to my information, the sole male survivor of the entire Luebeck's Heijno Dynasty was 32 years old Gustav Johann Heyno (Heijno) because he was in Viborg (Viipuri), in the Grand Duchy of Finland.

And because he had a hereditary ducal rank and was the Counsel in commercial matters to the Czar (Emperor) of Russia he was under the protection of the Czar Alexander I.

At the time as Luebeck received its Free Imperial City State status in 1181 A.D. from the Emperor Frederick Barbarossa, it was owned, built and ruled by the Hainault (Haino) merchant Princes who all had a hereditary ducal rank. Therefore as the owners of the city, all Luebeck's Aldermen belonged, one way or another, to the Hainault (Haino) Dynasty. As the Luebeck was elevated to a Free Imperial City State, its Aldermen became known as Senators, and because of their ducal rank they became Emperor's Counsels of Commerce, or Emperor's advisers in commercial matters. Around that time they started to write their name in Gothic script Heyno with Gothic "Y" with umlaut to obtain the same Latin Haino pronunciation. Later as most of the Europe adopted the Roman script the name was written as Heijno. It is a well known fact, that in those days, it didn't even come into question that an Emperor, or a ruler with autocratic powers would have taken counsel, or advice from anyone else than his peers who had elected him, and had the power in many cases to depose him.

As Bernadotte and his "thugs" had annihilated the whole Luebeck's old government, Bernadotte appointed and installed new "Senators" into Luebeck's Council, who in fact were his lackeys with the fancy title of a 'Senator'. As the Governor of the Hanse Cities and a revolutionary, he must have selected his "Senators" from his own kind of "revolutionaries" and "misfits" to have a full control of the city, therefore these "clowns" couldn't have been classified as Patricians.

As soon as Bernadotte was crowned King of Sweden he attacked Norway in 1814 A.D. We have to remember that Sweden was still a formidable power and that Norway wasn't any match or danger to Sweden. Neither should we forget that Sweden still occupied parts of the northern Germany especially the strategically important Stralsund where it had a garrison. Therefore attacking Norway couldn't have been a show of military prowess, especially as shortly after the war Norway declared its independence, and Bernadotte didn't seem to mind that Norway became an independent state.

We also have to remember that many people in Sweden didn't approve that Bernadotte was selected to be their King, but couldn't do anything about it, because in those days the ordinary people in Sweden didn't have representatives in the Parliament and therefore didn't have a vote.

Considering all these facts, in my opinion, the only explanation for Bernadotte's war against Norway was that he was afraid that in Bergen were some survivors of the Heijno (Hainault-Haino) merchant Princes who would have been strong pretenders to the Swedish throne. Later, in 1840 A.D. as mentioned earlier, there was a strong movement to replace Bernadotte, but for unexplainable reasons he survived that attempt.

The new government of Luebeck was composed by Bernadotte of "revolutionary minded" elements who typically for that kind of people, strutted around with their newly received "Senator" titles and imagined to be Patricians. As did later also do the well known fiction writer Thomas Mann, of whom his uncle said that "he is a bird which soils his own nest".

In the new government of Luebeck was also a "Senator" by the name of Johann Sigmund Mann Jr. who was Thomas Mann's father. I have read several books about Thomas Mann and found his genealogy very nebulous. His first ancestor was supposed to be one Johann Mann, a draper, born in 1644 A.D. in Parhim near Elbe. In one book it is said that Thomas Mann's grandfather was a draper, and in another one that he was a brewer in Rostock, and that his son Johann Sigmund Mann Jr. came to Luebeck in 1790 A.D. at the age of 14 years old, became a brewer, and was appointed as a "Senator". Whatever the case may be, but considering that he was appointed by Bernadotte, didn't give me the impression that the question was of a prestigious merchant Patrician, but rather a "revolutionary minded" individual. Speaking about Thomas Mann's book "The Buddenbrooks", we have to remember that Thomas Mann always insisted that all his books are fictional.

His wife Katia Mann states in her book "Unwritten Memories", where she also says that "she didn't see anything Hanseatic in her husband and that he always got into trouble with his friends of whom he wrote derogatory stories by using fictional names".

As mentioned earlier, the Supreme Commander of Swedish Armed Forces in Finland was Baron H.M. Buddenbrock who was executed for treason in 1742 A.D. together with Marshal Lewenhaupt.

Is that the case of which Thomas Mann got the name Buddenbrooks?

I found the most informative book about Thomas Mann to be his wife's book "Unwritten Memories" by Katia Mann, who was a very sophisticated and honest Lady, the daughter of Alfred Israel Pringsheim, a highly respected Jewish mathematician and a University Professor, who was very much against his daughter's choice for a husband.

In her book she also mentions that Thomas Mann wrote his book "The Buddenbrooks" in 1901 A.D. and received his Nobel Prize in 1929 A.D. for his book, "Magic Mountain" and not for "The Buddenbrooks". Yet for some unexplainable reason there are people who promote "The Buddenbrooks" but don't say a word about "The Magic Mountain".

Considering these facts, I find that to make a "Shrine" out of fiction (The Buddenbrook House in Luebeck) is a travesty of history and an insult to all Germanic merchants, who lost many lives in creating peaceful trade and to bring civilization to many nations.

Isn't this "a crime against humanity" and hate mongering against honest merchants?

Just hypothetical question:

If after The Second World War a country would have elected one of Hitler's scums, such as Eichmann, Bormann, Himmler etc., as their king, how would the world receive their descendants?

As Alexander I passed away in 1825 A.D. his son Nicholas succeeded him as Nicholas I (1825 A.D. – 1855 A.D.), most likely Gustav Johann Heyno (Heijno) continued to be Czar's (Emperor's) Counsel in commercial matters. However, Gustav Johann was getting older and therefore may have suggested to Czar Nicholas I to be relieved from his position as Counsel, and to be replaced by a younger man. Therefore, I believe that the Czar must have requested him if one of his sons could continue the work as Counsel.

Gustav Johann Heyno (Heijno) who had centuries, if not millenniums old hereditary ducal rank, had three sons who all inherited their father's ducal rank. As did all their male descendants inherit the said station in life according to the pre-biblical system. All three sons of Gustav Johann Heyno (Hainault-Haino), who in addition of his ducal rank, inherited also their father's membership in the merchants' First Guild, and therefore they were fully qualified to replace their father as Czar's (Emperor's) Counsel in commercial matters.

At that time Gustav Johann's oldest son Carl Gustav Heyno (Heijno) must have been a well established merchant, and the youngest son Alexander August Heyno (Heijno) must have been more interested to become a merchant than a Counsel. This made the second son Robert Ferdinand (Fredrick) Heyno (Heijno) as the best possible candidate for the said position especially as he had entered military service in 1841 A.D. at the age of 18 years. According to University of Helsinki's Matriculation, it is stated that "2.2. 1842 A.D. Robert Ferdinand – Fredrick-Heyno was Counsel of commerce (in Swedish Commerce Rad)" (Note, at the age of 19 years). This clearly indicates that in those days the Emperor's Counsel was an important station in life, which could be held only by the highest nobility.

I believe that the dream of Gustav Johann Heyno (Heijno) was to return to Luebeck and live there, but due to the constant Swedish presence in northern Germany, and because Bernadotte was the King of Sweden, it was impossible for him to return in those days.

After Gustav Johann Heyno (Heijno) passed away, his three sons who had never lived in Luebeck, and most likely never visited the city, started to revive the Family enterprise called "Die Hanse" by setting its Head Office in St. Petersburg where they had the Czar's protection. This need was exhibited during the Crimean War. As Russia was involved in a war against Turkey on the Crimean peninsula, which at that time belonged to Turkey regardless that it was an extension of Russia's mainland, Russia started a war against Turkey to reclaim their land in 1854 A.D. - 1855 A.D.

At that time during the Crimean War, English and French Navy combined sent a large armada to the Baltic Sea by the request of Sweden, which wanted to divert the Russian trade to go through Sweden to be able to levy taxes on Russian trade. Said armada had to return home empty handed. Therefore after the Crimean War, the eldest son of Gustav Johann Heyno (Heijno) Carl Gustav Heyno (Heijno) moved his whole family from Viborg (Viipuri) to St. Petersburg where he had established a Head Office for "Die Hanse". (Around that time all 1st Guild merchants in Viborg moved to St. Petersburg) He also moved his church records to St. Petersburg's German congregation, and by doing this, he became officially the citizen of Russia.

The second son of Gustav Johann Heyno (Heijno) Robert Ferdinand – Fredrick Heyno (Heijno) who was Czar's Counsel in commercial matters, retired as Lieutenant Colonel from Czar's army and moved to Narva to help his brothers in the revival of "Die Hanse". Robert Ferdinand didn't have any descendants. The youngest son of Gustav Johann Heyno (Heijno) Alexander August Heyno (Heijno) remained in Viborg (Viipuri), regardless of the proximity of Sweden where Bernadotte sat cozy on the Swedish throne as the King, Alexander August traded under his own name. He had four sons, the oldest son Gustav Lorenz died in a "freak weapon's handling accident" at the age of 14 years as an Army cadet in Viborg (Viipuri). The second son Carl had one male descendant, Ragnar, who had two sons. The other two sons of Alexander August didn't have male descendants.

Then as Czar Nicholas I died in 1855 A.D. his son Alexander succeeded him as Alexander II, who was a very progressive ruler, and who wanted his country to flourish. Therefore he favoured the efforts of Carl Gustav Heyno (Heijno) to organize with the Russian merchants, the entire Russia's commercial trade, to give Russian merchants greater opportunity to eliminate foreign exploitation through "Die Hanse". During the centuries the Hainault (Haino) merchants had suffered many severe setbacks. As the trading became difficult in Bruges due to constant wars, they moved their trading operations to Luebeck. And as the trading activities in Luebeck had been demolished in 1806 A.D. and the Heijno (Hainault-Haino) merchant Patricians annihilated almost to extinction and the murderer of the family sat as the King of Sweden. The new generation of the Heijno (Hainault – Haino) family began to reorganize their family's commercial enterprise called "Die Hanse" through St. Petersburg together with the Russian merchants under the protection of the Czar (Emperor) of Russia. It is mentioned earlier that Czar Alexander II was a very progressive ruler, and in his modernization of Russia he also emancipated the serfs (abolished slavery), for which he was assassinated in 1881 A.D.

Carl Gustav Heijno who had three sons, passed away in 1878 A.D. but only his eldest son Alfons Johann, who continued his father's trading activities, had male descendants.

According to the ancient system the ducal rank and the Patrician status were inherited by all male descendants at their birth.

Alfons Johann Heyno (Heijno) who had seven sons had inherited his father's commercial enterprise "Die Hanse". Around that time the Guild system had been abolished and the trade became free, which also helped the Russian merchants.

The oldest son of Alfons Johann Heyno (Heijno) Ernest, who wasn't married, assisted his father in commercial activities. He died in 1916 A.D. in a peculiar "traffic accident" at the age of 38 years.

The second son of Alfons Johann Heyno (Heijno), Alfons Julius, graduated from Nicholas I Naval Academy as a civil engineer, and participated in Russia's war against Japan in 1905 A.D. as an Officer in the battleship Rurik, which sank in the battle of Tzhushima, and among other survivors, Alfons Julius was 16 and half months as prisoner of war in Japan. Alfons Julius wasn't married.

The third son of Alfons Johann Heyno (Heijno), Friedrich Robert Carl, had one son Alexis Thomas, who died in 1939 A.D. in a "suspicious car accident" at the age of 21.

The fourth son of Alfons Johann Heyno (Heijno), Woldemar Johann, had one son Woldemar Sven.

The fifth son of Alfons Johann Heyno (Heijno), Boris Anatol, died at the age of 23 years of "unknown cause".

The sixth son of Alfons Johann Heyno (Heijno), Johannes, who died in 1936 A.D. at the age of 48 years, had three sons, Gunnar Johannes, Rolf Alfons Woldemar and Erik Alfred.

The seventh son of Alfons Johann Heyno (Heijno), Alexis Friedrich, had one son, Ludwig Archibald, who died in 1939 A.D. in "a freak weapons handling accident" at the age of 19 in the beginning of The Second World War.

In 1903 A.D. two years prior to his death, Alfons Johann Heyno (Heijno) for unexplainable reason transferred his whole family's church records from the German congregation to Uusikirikko Finnish congregation, in the Grand Duchy of Finland. It is unknown to us whether he had a premonition of the coming revolution, or what were the reasons? But as Finland got its independence after The Russian Revolution peoples' citizenship was, at that time, determined by the Church Records. Therefore, our branch of the Heyno (Heijno) family was considered to be citizens of Finland, and not as Russian refugees who had to apply from the League of Nations in Geneva for the so called Nansen Passport. After Alfons Julius Heyno (Heijno) was freed from the prison camp in Japan, where he was kept with other Russian prisoners of war, he returned to active duty in the Czar's Navy.

As Russian Revolution started, Alfons Julius Heyno (Heijno) was in Kronstadt's Naval Base. The drunken sailors, who were incited by Lenin and his criminal gang, started the Revolution by throwing their Russian Officers alive into the steamships' fiery furnaces. However, because Alfons Julius was considered by the instigators as being the citizen of the Grand Duchy of Finland, which had permitted Lenin to travel through Finland to Russia they advised the sailors not to touch him, but permit him to leave the Kronstadt's Naval Base. As soon as he arrived in St. Petersburg, he told the whole family to leave immediately St. Petersburg, which they did without taking even their personal effects, caught the last train from St. Petersburg to Finland, and right after they had crossed the border the borders of Russia were closed on Lenin's order, and by using Lenin's own words "to prevent the vermin from escaping". I remember, how the tears came down from my uncles eyes, as he told what he had witnessed, in which he had lost most of his good friends.

Finland got its independence in 1917 A.D. Alfons Julius Heyno (Heijno) joined the Finnish Navy as a Naval Commander. But in 1923 A.D. without any reason, he was forced to retire as an Engineer Commodore at the age of 43, regardless that Alfons Julius Heyno (Heijno) was the sole expert in Finland on the powerful steam turbines. The case was very peculiar.

As the Commander's position of the biggest Naval Base in Finland became vacant, and regardless of the very good recommendation letter from the Commander of Finland's Navy, to the Commander of Finland's Armed Forces, it was decided to bypass Alfons Julius, and elevated a two ranks younger Officer into the said position. Later, as Finland started to build battle ships, Alfons Julius Heyno (Heijno) was recalled to oversee the building of the said ships.

I believe that only external pressure would have forced the Commander of Armed Forces, for national security reasons to bypass Alfons Julius Heyno (Heijno) who was most qualified for the said position. We have to realize that as the Commander of Finland's biggest Naval Base, Alfons Julius Heyno (Heijno) would have become very famous internationally, and would have perhaps become a strong pretender to several European thrones, especially Sweden.

The other three sons of Alfons Johann Heyno (Heijno), Friedrich, Woldemar and Johannes couldn't get work in Finland, regardless that they were experts in their own fields, and would have been an asset to the country. Therefore, having families they were forced to live on the family's summer estate in Finnish Carelia. This estate used to have three two-storey buildings which according to the older generation, were like art galleries, but had burned in a "peculiar" fire in 1917 A.D. about a couple of months before the Russian Revolution.

The youngest son of Alfons Johann Heyno (Heijno), Alexis, who was a civil engineer, graduated in Heidelberg University, Germany, was able to get employment in an English Engineering Company in Helsinki.

Though they all had great difficulties in Finland after the Russian Revolution, they couldn't go back to Luebeck, because their entire Dynasty there had been annihilated by Jean Batiste Bernadotte.

After The Second World War the Heyno (Heijno) families lost, by force, their real estates and all their belongings because Finland lost Carelian Isthmus and the City of Viborg (Viipuri) to the Soviet Union (Russia).

Again, all this was done by force.

To analyse the lives and the fate of some of the male descendants of Gustav Johann Heyno (Heijno) during the three generations is thought provoking:

- The fatal "weapon's handling accident" of Gustav Lorenz Heyno (Heijno) at the Cadet School, the grandson of Gustav Johann Heyno (Heijno), at the age of 14 years in 1873 A.D.
- The fatal traffic accident of Ernst Heyno (Heijno), the great grandson of Gustav Johann Heyno (Heijno), at the age of 38 years, in 1916 A.D.
- The forced retirement of Alfons Julius Heyno (Heijno), the great grandson of Gustav Johann Heyno (Heijno), without any reason from the Finnish Navy as an Engineer Commodore at the age of 43 years in 1923 A.D.
- The fatal "car accident" of Alexis Heyno (Heijno) at the age of 21 years in 1939 A.D.
- During The Winter War in 1940 A.D. The fatal "weapon's handling accident" of Ludwig Heyno (Heijno) the great-great grandson of Gustav Johann Heyno (Heijno), at the age of 19 years.
- A survival from a car accident which crippled a great-great-great grandson of Gustav Johann Heyno (Heijno)
- A miraculous survival of the great-great grandson of Gustav Johann Heyno (Heijno) from what seems to have been a well planned pre-meditated murder plot in 2003 A.D.

Could all these have been just coincidences?

We also have to consider that the remnant of the Heyno (Heijno) Dynasty was very small due to the upheavals in Europe, The Russian Revolution, and The Second World War, in my opinion, all this leads to many questions.

As I said in the Introduction "A Peoples' greatness can be measured only by how powerful are their opponents, because powerful people don't have time for insignificance".

